

# Rosicrucian Fundamentals

An Exposition of the Rosicrucian  
Synthesis of Religion, Science and  
Philosophy, in Fourteen Complete  
Instructions



GEORGE WINSLOW 1876-1944 PLUMMER, HARRY HOUDINI  
COLLECTION (LIBRARY OF CONGRESS) DLC

# ROSI CRUCIAN FUNDAMENTALS

An Exposition of the Rosicrucian Synthesis  
of Religion, Science and Philosophy

---

---

In Fourteen Complete Instructions

By

K H E I 

*Author of*

*The Master's Word, Rosicrucian Symbology  
True Christmas Story, Greatest Birthday, etc.*



Authorized by the High Council  
of the  
Societas Rosicruciana In America



Done into Print and Published by the  
Flame Press, at the Sign of the Rose  
Bush, on Manhattan Isle, New York City,  
M C M X X



BF1623  
R7P5

Copyrighted 1920,  
by the Societas Rosicruciana In America.

OCT -5 1920

© Cl. A 597669

“Round about,  
Eyeing the light, on more than million thrones,  
Stood, eminent, whatever from our earth  
Has to the skies return'd. How wide the leaves,  
Extended to their utmost, of this ROSE,  
Whose lowest step embosoms such a space  
Of ample radiance !”

—*Dante.*

## INSTRUCTION IX.

### TERRESTRIAL AND SUB-TERRESTRIAL

(Continued)

#### THE PHYSICAL ACTION OF VULCANISM DEFINED. NOTABLE PLANETARY CONSIDERATIONS.

---

**Popular idea of Earth's shape.**—The popular concept of the shape of the Earth is that of a sphere flattened at the Poles. This concept is not altogether correct, for in reality the Earth more nearly approaches a "pear shape," a statement confirmed by the most advanced astronomers and physicists. This shape we will explain.

**Water and Land distribution.**—The Earth IS flattened at the poles, the equatorial diameter (7,296 miles) being  $26 \frac{2}{3}$  miles greater than the polar.  $\frac{8}{11}$  of the Earth's surface, or 144,000,000 square miles (note the significant number), is depressed and occupied by salt oceans. The area of continents and islands is about 52,745,000 square miles. The mean depth of oceanic depressions is about 14,000 feet, and the greatest mean height of land is about 2,252 feet. The greatest ocean depth is 30,930 feet (south of the Friendly Islands), and the greatest land height is 29,000 feet (Mount Everest, in the Himalayas).<sup>1</sup>

**An illustration.**—An excellent illustration of the comparative dimensional features of the Earth may be shown by a globe 12 feet in diameter. On this globe the highest mountains would be represented by an elevation of  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an inch, and the mean depth of the ocean by a depression of  $\frac{1}{19}$  of an inch.<sup>2</sup>

**Temperatures in Archaean Time.**—The temperature at the time the Earth's crust was formed would have approximated  $2,500^{\circ}$  F. The atmosphere then contained all the water of the globe, all the carbon, hydrocarbon and other materials which have since formed solid compounds. At the condensation of the ocean its temperature must have approximated  $500^{\circ}$  F. Then the atmospheric pressure was 30 times greater than at present. Long ages elapsed before the Earth became sufficiently cool to permit

the existence of the earliest and lowest life forms.<sup>3</sup> This was known geologically as the Archaean Time.

**Center of the Earth, Solid.**—Contrary to popular opinion, it is quite certain that the central part of the Earth is now solid, as the enormous pressure in this central part would raise the melting point far beyond any conceivable temperature. At the period of the first aggregation of the material elements of the globe the central part was already solid from pressure. The possibility of great extrusions or upheavals, like the formation of mountain chains, is due to the liquid stratum between the solid nucleus and the solid crust and to layers of plastic rock at a probable depth of about twenty-five miles.<sup>4</sup>

**Plastic Stratum; Isostasy.**—This fact of the solidly substantial center and the plastic or liquid stratum permits the Earth to adjust itself to gravitational pressure through molecular flow, and the Planet owes its shape to the principle of gravitational equilibrium. The particular condition of equilibrium to which gravitation has assigned or compelled the Earth is called by Dutton ISO-STASY.<sup>5</sup>

NOTE. The surface of the ocean, as we know, is approximately spheroidal in shape. The vertical at any point is determined by the resultant of two forces, centrifugal force arising from the Earth's rotation, and gravity arising from the joint attraction of the Earth and sea. And the surface of the sea is determined by the condition that this resultant shall act perpendicularly to the surface at every point.

**Sequence of events in a rotating mass.**—The sequence of events in a rotating mass which shrinks while remaining homogeneous is well established. When the mass is of low density so that its rotation is slow, its shape differs from a sphere only in being flattened slightly, or orange shaped; it is an oblate spheroid of small eccentricity."

**The "Pear Shaped" figure.**—As shrinkage proceeds and the speed of rotation increases, the flattening increases in amount until an ellipsoidal figure is reached. Carried still further, the ellipsoid "forms the celebrated pear-shaped figure of equilibrium, of which the existence was first demonstrated by Poincare, and which has been the subject of elaborate mathematical research by Poincare, Darwin, Liapounoff and others."<sup>6</sup>

**Explains the Earth's Shape.**—This exactly explains the process through which the Earth has passed and the approximate shape it now retains. It must not be regarded as the ordinary

pear shape, but as differing slightly from the idea of the orange shape.

**How Rosicrucians regard Cosmogonic Processes.**—Rosicrucians regard all the cosmogonic processes or the Earth's formative periods as the activities of the Solar God in preparing those conditions which would be later utilized by the Indwelling Planetary Spirit or Regent as the agencies through which that Regent could direct and govern the development of the planet and its various life waves and Kingdoms, after the Incarnation, from within.

Geological science describes minutely all the conditions that operated to bring about the status of the Earth as it has been and as we know it to be.

**Aether, a Fifth Element.**—Rosicrucians, however, see in every minutely described detail an evidence of the operation of the Elemental Forces under Intelligent Direction of the Creative Hierarchs, working through the Nature Spirits and the Four Elements, plus still other Elements which will be revealed to mankind at a later Period of Earth Evolution. At the present time occult and academic science agree in adding Aether as a Fifth Element. Not the Ether of popular science, nor yet Akasha, but the greater concept of an Aether that is the source of both these.

**The Elements as understood by Occultists; SEVEN Elements.**—The true occultist looks much deeper into the source of the Four Elements than science. The FIRE of occultism is not the material flame; it is the pure Akasha, "the First Matter of the Magnum Opus, the Astral Light. AIR was simple Nitrogen. WATER, the primordial fluid, and EARTH, Man. FIRE was also Light. Rosicrucians know of the existence of SEVEN distinct Elements, the Four Physical Elements just named, the Fifth, Aether," which will become visible in the Air towards the end of our Fourth Round, to reign supreme over the others during the whole of the Fifth Round. The remaining two Elements are as yet beyond ordinary human comprehensive description.<sup>7</sup>

**Function of Air.**—The chief function of the Element Air is that of transportation in regard to terrestrial modifications. Transportation of Heat, Seeds, Moisture and some living organisms.

**Functions of Water.**—The functions of Water, another of the Elements, are of great interest and importance. It, too, is an important factor in temperature. In these parts of the Earth its temperature ranges from 55° to 30°, the cold depths being from 45° and below; and the tropical currents ranging from 45° to 55°.

**A carrier of solid matter.**—As a carrier, transporter or distributor of solid matter, we may take the great central southward flowing system of the North American region as an example. Each year the Mississippi River pours into the Atlantic Ocean 19,500,000,000,000 cubic feet of water. In South America the Amazon contributes five times as much on account of the greater precipitation in the territory through which it flows.<sup>8</sup>

**The Mississippi River.**—Annually the Mississippi contributes to the Gulf of Mexico over 812,500,000,000 pounds of silt, equal to a mass one square mile in area and 241 feet deep. The total annual discharge of the Ganges is estimated at 6,368,000,000 cubic feet.<sup>9</sup>

**A carrier of Heat.**—As a transporter of heat, the water of the warm Gulf Stream contributes to the North Atlantic 77,479,650,000,000,000,000 foot pounds of energy in the form of heat PER DAY.<sup>10</sup> This may be easily seen as a preventive of an untoward recurrence of the Glacial conditions aside from the conditions imposed by the Earth's axial revolutions. If an opening could be made through Behring Strait for the tropical currents of the Pacific, the entire Arctic climate would be radically altered.

**Temperatures of Earth's Crust.**—In connection with the matter of temperatures, it is interesting to note that in deep borings it has been found that the temperature of the Earth's crust increases, at the rate of about one degree F. to every 55 or 60 feet of descent. Such a rate, in the latitude of New York, would give sufficient heat to boil water at a depth of less than two miles; and at a depth of 35 miles the temperature would be 3,000 F., or that of the fusing point of iron.<sup>11</sup>

It is not our purpose to make this a book of physical science, but the facts given are all of importance to the student in correlating the interaction of the Elements and the Elemental Forces with the operations by which the actual physical modifications of the planet are accomplished.

Especially is this true in regard to Air, Water and Earth (Land), for on the interaction of these great Elements depends the activity of Vulcanism, the most powerful of all forces at the command of the Regent; the most sudden, effective and productive of greatest results in the least possible time (cosmically interpreted).

**How Earth's Heat is derived.**—The factor of heat enters into the interactions of the above noted Elements in every possible degree. The Earth's heat is derived from three sources:

- 1st. Bombardment of the Solar Energy.
- 2nd. The Earth's own Heated Interior.
- 3rd. From Chemical and Mechanical Action.

**Vulcanism; why so named; from Vulcan, Chief of the Cyclops.**—It is with the last we have principally to do in considering the origin and persistence of vulcanism, which name, incidentally, is given to volcanic activity because from the cosmic and occult standpoint it is one of the greatest factors still operative as visible, cosmic process in preparing Earth for the sublime conditions that will prevail on this planet during the far away Vulcan Period to come. Vulcan was the chief and Polyphemus the sub-chief of the Cyclops of Greek fable. The Cyclops were workers in Iron and earthy material and their forges were often called "volcanoes" by writers of mythology. Hence it became a grand idea to imagine that the weapons and instruments of the warrior Gods were fashioned by some superior power that used a Volcano for its forge.<sup>12</sup>

**Transformation of Motion into Heat.**—"In the upturning and flexure of rocks attending mountain-making, there have been movements on a grand scale; and, through the transformation of this motion into heat, the rocks have received in some cases a high temperature, sufficient to promote, through the moisture present, the consolidation of rocks, and even their crystallization and metamorphism; and also, in the view of Mallet, the fusion on a scale grand enough to originate Volcanoes."<sup>13</sup> "Heat is produced by condensation, except when vapors become liquid or solid, or as when liquids (as water) become solid. It is also produced by chemical action." Its effects are therefore:

1. Expansion and Contraction.
2. Eruptions of Igneous Rock and associated phenomena.
3. Metamorphism.
4. Formation of Veins.

These are the principal factors and fundamental essentials in the metamorphosis of the planet, as it passes from one phase of development to another. They are the processes and the results observed in volcanic activity.

**Volcanoes defined and explained.**—Volcanoes are elevations built up or broken down by their own action as the case may be, having a pit or cavity at the top called the crater. In some volcanoes this pit is thousands of feet deep, in others shallow and in extinct volcanoes often wanting, owing to its having been left filled when the activity ceased and the lava cooled.

**The Crater.**—From the crater issues liquid rock, which, after becoming cold, is called lava. From an active crater are seen at practically all times emissions of steam, gases, vapors, smoke, aqueous vapors, and sulphur gases. The materials produced by an eruption are lavas, cinders, ashes, tufas, vapors and gases, scoria and punice.

**Highest Volcanoes.**—The highest volcanoes on this globe are Aconcagua in Chile, 23,000 feet, and Sorata and Illimani in Bolivia, each over 24,000 feet. The former seems to be still active. Mts. Shasta, Hood, St. Helen's and other peaks in California and the west are isolated cones 11,000 to 14,400 feet high. To show the gigantic size of some craters, we may mention Kilauea in Hawaii. This crater is 3 miles in greatest length, nearly two miles wide,  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles in circuit and has been 1,000 feet deep after some of its eruptions.



FIG. 32  
ON THE EDGE OF THE SUMMIT OF MT. KNAWEOWEO, WHICH  
FORMS THE CENTRAL CRATER OF MAUNA LOA, HAWAII.

—(Photo copyright by A. Gartley, Honolulu.)

**Eruptions; Wind as a carrier.**—In eruption, volcanoes throw up fiery streams composed of red-hot fragments, which as they cool, fall as cinders or ashes. When an eruption is accompanied by a rainstorm the resultant steam precipitates the reddish or yellowish mass called tufa. Wind as a carrier shows its power in the fact that in 1835 volcanic dust was carried from Guatemala to Jamaica, 800 miles.

In a dust shower near Lyons, 720,000 pounds of dust fell. Dust from Africa has fallen on ships 1,000 miles away.<sup>14</sup>

**A simple overflow.**—Sometimes an eruption consists simply in the overflow of lava caused by the rising of the crater floor. In a simple escapement of this kind 15,400,000,000 cubic feet flowed down into the sea, causing vast clouds of steam.

**Earthquakes; Seismatics.**—Eruptions are often heralded and still more often accompanied by earthquakes, but it is not an ap-

parent law. While Vesuvius is one of the most notable volcanic examples, its vigor is exceeded by Krakatoa, whose cinders and ashes were carried up to a height of 150,000 feet in 1883, and according to Verbeck are said to have been carried by the wind around the world, causing red sunset glows in many lands.<sup>15</sup> When earthquakes accompany volcanic activity they "are due to fractures of rocks in subterranean regions, consequent on undermining by the solvent action of water, extrusion of lava, or explosions attending the major volcanic action."<sup>16</sup>

**Pacific Slope.**—The Pacific Slope of the Rocky Mountains is notable for its lava beds, many of them around volcanoes or volcanic vents and resulting from fissure eruptions. Fissure outflows made the Palisades along the Hudson and the Mts. Tom and Holyoke in New England.<sup>17</sup> The boundaries of the volcanic region of the western coast of America, Wyoming, southern Idaho, Oregon, Northern California and Washington embrace over 150,000 square miles. The lava from Mount Shasta and Lassen Peak at an early age completely obliterated the ancient valleys and forced the waterways to cut new channels.<sup>18</sup>

**Table of notable Seismatic and Volcanic Activities.**—The following table of notable volcanic and seismatic activities accurately attested in history will be of interest in showing the wide area of distribution of volcanic activity and also show the fallacy of the idea that vulcanism is a punishment to humanity in spite of the number of persons killed, as the total is small when compared with world statistics, and included peoples who, in many instances were little advanced in human evolution.

Place	No. killed	Year
Constantinople .....	10,000	577
Catania .....	15,000	1137
Syria .....	20,000	1158
Cilicia .....	60,000	1268
Naples .....	40,000	1456
Lisbon .....	30,000	1531
Naples .....	70,000	1626
Vesuvius .....	18,000	1631
Calabria .....	10,000	1638
Schamaki .....	80,000	1667
Sicily .....	100,000	1693
Yeddo .....	190,000	1703
Algiers .....	18,000	1716
Peking .....	95,000	1731

Place	No. killed	Year
Lima and Callao .....	18,000	1746
Cairo .....	40,000	1754
Kashue (Persia) .....	40,000	1755
Lisbon .....	50,000	1755
Syria .....	20,000	1759
Central America .....	40,000	1797
Aleppo .....	20,000	1822
Calabria .....	10,000	1857
San Jose de Cucuta (Columbia) .....	14,000	1875
Island of Hondo (Japan) .....	10,000	1891
Kloet (Java) .....	150	1901
Martinique and St. Vincent .....	40,000	1902
Krakatoa (Straits of Sunda) .....	36,380	1883
Messina and 54 towns .....	164,850	1908
Central Italy .....	12,000	1914

The list culminates with the most recent eruption of note, that of the Volcano Kalut, or Keloet in eastern Java, southward of the District of Soerabaja. There are fifty volcanic peaks in the range. The last notable eruption of Keloet (Kloet) was exactly eighteen years prior to the one in question, on May 20th, 1919. This last eruption was the cause of death to over 16,000 and the destruction of thirty-one villages.<sup>19</sup> Some estimates give the dead as 50,000, but this is not verified to date.

**Vesuvius.**—The eruptions of Vesuvius have perhaps been the most carefully recorded of all the notable volcanic activities. The eruption that destroyed Pompeii and Herculaneum occurred A. D. 79. Subsequent eruptions have occurred in A. D. 203, 472, 512, 652, 982, 1036, 1158, 1500, 1631, 1737, 1794, 1822, 1855, 1872, 1885, 1891, 1906.<sup>20</sup> Prior to the eruption of 1036 there were six eruptions. Since that time there have been twelve, of which the last five were within a period of 51 years. These figures have been offered by some occult writers as evidence of the accelerated growth of materialism for which one of the great churches of Christendom and latterly academic science are held by such writers to be guilty.

**Vulcanism not confined to the Christian Era.**—Now the fact is that there is no particular need of singling out the Christian Era in especial, for volcanic eruptions have by no means been confined to the period since the Christian Era. On the contrary, the greatest volcanic activity this Earth has ever experienced was through the long ages prior to A. D. What is more, volcanic ac-

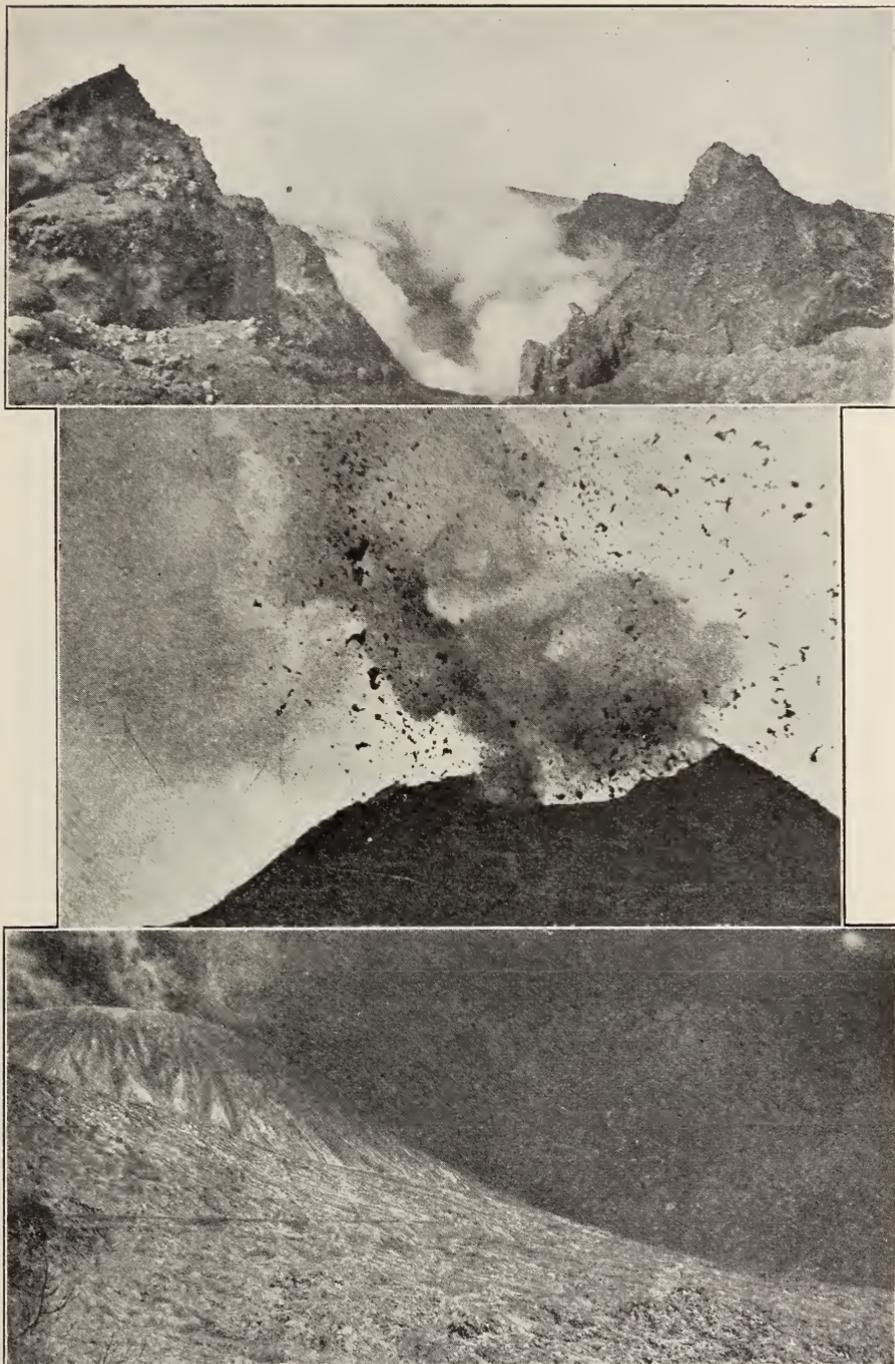


FIG. 33. VESUVIUS. Upper picture, the Crater. Middle, a Terrific Explosion of Rock Masses from a Temporary Cone which, like a Mushroom, sprang up in a single Night out of the Great Central Crater. (Photo by Prof. Frank Alford Perret, Eruption of 1905.) Lower, Vast Crinkled Seas of Lava after an Eruption.

tivity has in many instances been most intense in locations where little or no human life was present.

**Less Volcanic Activity since A. D. than before.**—In the whole past 5,000 years there has been infinitely less volcanic activity anywhere on the Earth than in the times of the Atlanteans and prior thereto, when the Earth's crust was much less solid than now. A glance at a geographical globe will also reveal that within a wide range of the parallel of latitude in which Vesuvius is situated, a preponderance of the volcanic activity since the beginning of the Christian Era has occurred. And this activity noticeably increases in the latitudes nearer the Equator, notably in the Indian and Pacific archipelagos.

**No visitations of Providence; Earth Regent utilizes Volcanic Activity.**—Rosicrucians do not teach that Humanity is tormented by "visitations of Providence," wreakings of the vengeance of a wrathful God against His own creatures and the Emanations of Himself. A study of the past and prehistoric activities of vulcanism will show that the appearance and development of volcanoes has been predominantly from the polar region down toward the Equator in both hemispheres. The Earth Regent DOES utilize volcanic activity to break up the materializing tendencies OF THE EARTH ITSELF, and were it not for these activities the encrustation of the Earth would have reached a point which would render useless to man, animal and plant a large portion of its otherwise habitable areas. For it is a notable fact that within reasonable proximity, geographically speaking, wonderful fertility in both vegetable and animal kingdoms exists, while those more northern, general areas of extinct vulcanism are fast succumbing to the ever approaching cold.

#### **Igneous Eruptions in Western North America.—**

NOTE: "A great period of igneous eruptions in western North America commenced at the close of the Cretaceous (Laramide revolution), culminated in the Miocene, and may be said to have continued with undiminished intensity to the present time, some of the volcanic cones being not yet extinct. The Tertiary eruptions were in large part fissure eruptions, though great volcanic cones were also formed. The area in the northwestern United States covered by sheets of eruptive rock is only surpassed by that of the somewhat earlier (Cretaceous) outflows in the Deccan."<sup>21</sup>

**First use of the name "Volcano."**—The first use of the name "Volcano" seems to have been in connection with Aetna, and some of those in the Lipari Islands, which were regarded by the ancients as the seats of Hephaestus, "a Greek divinity identified

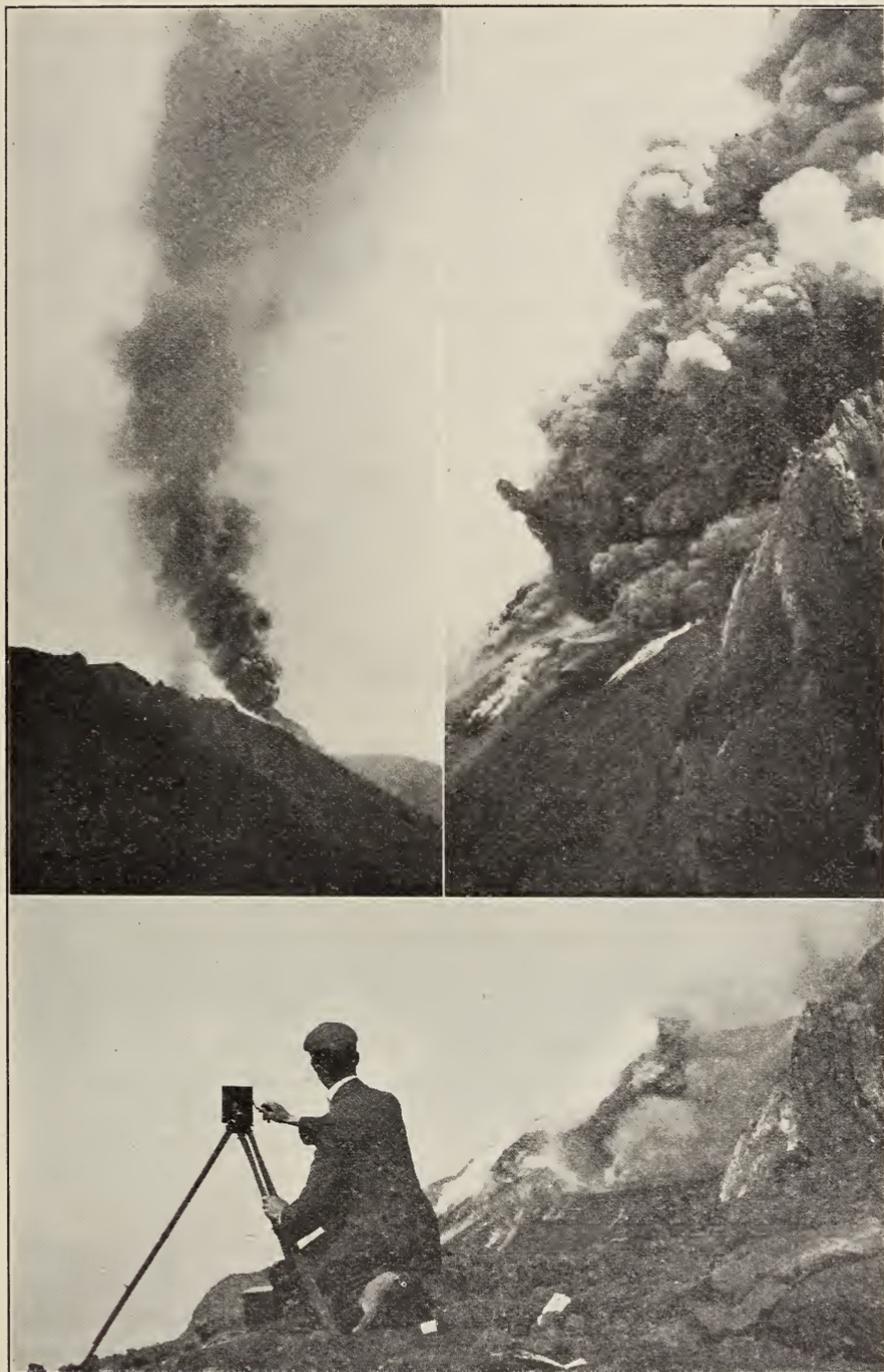


FIG. 34. VOLCANIC ACTIVITY. Upper Left, Stromboli in Action as seen from the N.E. Upper Right, Stromboli in Full Eruption, Near View. Lower, Prof. F. A. Perret in a Daring Position on Stromboli Awaiting an Opportunity to Cinematograph an Explosion. —(Upper pictures by Prof. Perret.)

with Vulcan, the God of Fire of Roman mythology." At the present time, scientists agree in applying to all volcanic phenomena, the terms "vulcanism" and "vulcanicity."

**Periods of Activity and Inactivity.**—Some volcanoes remain moderately active for centuries, as for instance, Stromboli, in the Lipari Islands. Krakatoa had been inactive for nearly two centuries prior to the eruption of 1883. Bandaisan in Japan had been silent for TWO THOUSAND YEARS prior to the great eruption of 1888, yet the Japanese have been steadily advancing in culture and civilization at a greater rate of progress than many other nations in the same time period, and especially have they preserved their spiritual beliefs and esoteric religious concepts more than many other nations and races. The volcanoes of Central France are regarded as extinct, inasmuch as no authentic historical record of any eruption is known, BUT THERE ARE NOT WANTING SIGNS THAT IN SOME PARTS OF THIS VOLCANIC REGION THE SUBERRANEAN FORCES MAY YET BE SLUMBERING RATHER THAN DEAD.<sup>22</sup>

**Fire Forces and the Great War.**—The last lines were written long before the Great War. That France has since been the field of the most explosive, fiery warfare of history may not be attributed to vulcanism by the exotericist, but the occultist will observe a distinct connection and relation between the Fire Forces of Earth-men and the Fire Forces of vulcanism, and if ever in the world's history the guiding hand of an over-ruling power has been observable in the rearrangement of continental Europe, and the battlefields of France are the stage on which some of the greatest reconstructive events in world history have been operative.

**Volcanoes influenced by Solar and Lunar Attraction.**—In connection with the periods of activity and inactivity of a volcano still operative, it is interesting to note that the fluid content of the crater is influenced, like the tides, by the Solar and Lunar forces of attraction, and Mr. H. V. A. Parsell advises us that he is informed by Prof. Perret, the foremost authority on volcanic eruptions, that the latter are even predicted by the same laws that govern maximum tides.

**Where the Magma comes from.**—The magma or subterranean molten matter does not come from the center of the Earth as many suppose. This was the old view. "When physicists urged the necessity of assuming that the globe was practically solid, vulcanologists were constrained to modify their views. Following the suggestion of W. Hopkins of Cambridge, they supposed that the

magma, instead of existing in a general central cavity, was located in comparatively small subterranean lakes.

**The Liquid Zone.**—Some authorities again, like the Rev. O. Fisher, regarded the magma AS CONSTITUTING A LIQUID ZONE, INTERMEDIATE BETWEEN A SOLID CORE AND A SOLID SHELL.<sup>23</sup>

**Source of Volcanic Heat.**—Volcanic heat is derived from a combination of several sources.

1. From the oxidation of large deposits of the Mars Element, Iron. This source is very limited.
2. From the transformation of the mechanical work of compressing and crushing parts of the Earth as a consequence of secular contraction.

**Gas Compressed as a Solid.**—

3. From conditions originating in the very nature of the interior of the Earth. At great depths, molten rock, being above its critical point, can exist only in the gaseous condition, but—A GAS UNDER ENORMOUS PRESSURE IS IN A CONDITION, SO FAR AS COMPRESSIBILITY IS CONCERNED, EXACTLY THE SAME AS A RIGID SOLID.

**Proportions of Planetary Constituents.**—

NOTE.—“Professor Arrhenius concludes from the high density of the Earth as a whole, and from other considerations, that the central part of our planet consists of gaseous iron (about 80% of the Earth's diameter) followed by a zone of rock magma in a gaseous condition (about 15%), covered by a thin solid crust (less than 1% of diameter). If water from the crust penetrates by osmosis through the sea-floor to the molten interior, it acts, at the high temperature, as an acid, and decomposes the silicates of the magma. The liquid rock expanded and rendered more mobile by this water, rises in fissures, but in its ascent suffers cooling, so that the water then loses its power as an acid and is displaced by silicic acid, when the escaping steam gives rise to the explosive phenomena of the volcano. The mechanism of the volcano is therefore much like that of a geyser.”<sup>24</sup>

**Planetesimals.**—

4. From the compression of the growing globe by its own gravity after the accretion of vast numbers of small cosmical bodies called “planetesimals. The heat proceeding from the center outwards; caused local fusion of the rocks”<sup>25</sup> and the formation of reservoirs of molten magma.

**Radioactivity.**—

5. From radioactivity, the radium present in the igneous rocks being sufficient to maintain a large percentage of

the Earth's heat. Major C. E. Dutton believes that "the development of heat arising from radioactivity may gradually bring about the melting of the rocks so as to form large subterranean pools of magma, from which volcanoes may be supplied."<sup>26</sup>

**Recapitulation.**—Enough of physical data has been given in the foregoing paragraphs to show the points of agreement between Rosicrucian and academic science on the features which make up the essentials of vulcanism. To recapitulate, Rosicrucian and academic science agree that

**Points of Coincidence.**—

1. The Center of the Earth is in a state that may be described as "Solid."
2. That there is a Liquid Stratum between the comparatively solid center and the outer Crust.
3. That volcanic activity results from the interaction of the Four Elements, particularly Water and Earth.
4. That volcanic activity is an evidence of progressive conditions and prevents too rapid crystallization of the Earth's Crust.

**Rosicrucianism goes further.**—Here the agreement may be said to terminate, for Rosicrucian Science goes a step further and postulates and teaches these conditions as being under the intelligent, direct and personal guidance of the Earth Regent in the establishment of the requisite conditions for the advancement of evolutionary process.

**Earth correlates with the World-Regions.**—The accompanying diagram will show how "that which below is like to that which is above," in other words, how our planet correlates with and is really a crystallization from the world regions of the Seventh Cosmic Plane.

The large central portion occupying 80% of the entire area represents the "Solid" interior. Next the Liquid Stratum or Magma occupying about 15%. Finally the Mineral Stratum or crust in varying gradations, the actual *mineral* substance itself being estimated at less than 1%.

**Ten divisions.**—Now, starting from the top of the Polar Axis and reading downward, ten different divisions will be noted. These correspond to the Ten Initiations of the Rosicrucian System, and show how the Planetary strata correlate therewith.

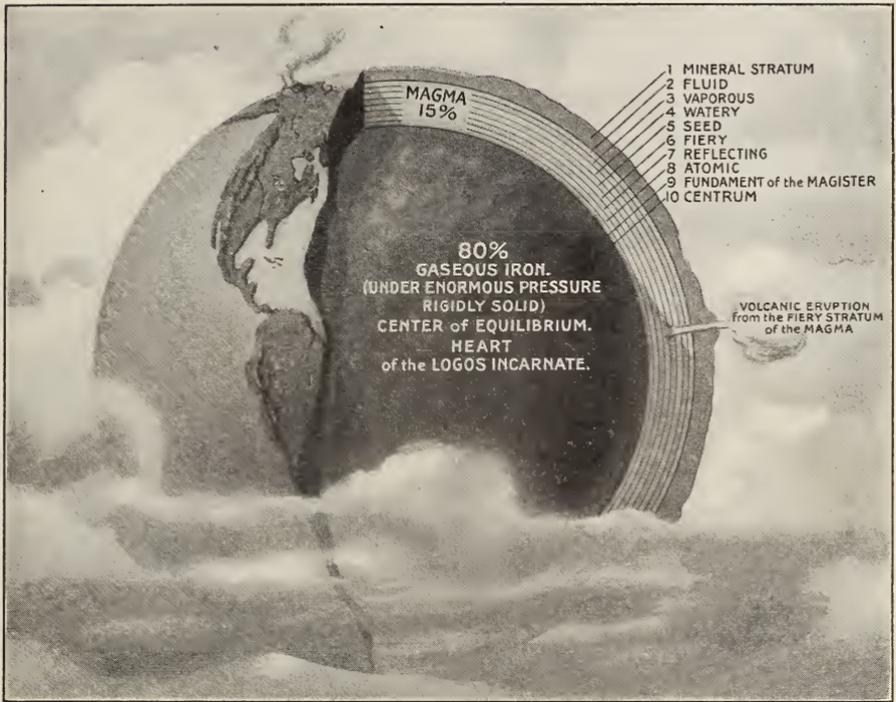


FIG. 35  
 DIAGRAMMATIC SECTIONAL VIEW OF THE EARTH, SHOWING  
 PROPORTIONATE THICKNESS OF STRATA AND  
 THEIR NAMES.

**First division.**—The Mineral Stratum, the properties of which form the subject of Geological and correlated sciences.

**Second division**—The Fluid Stratum.—This is not to be understood as Water, but as a plastic, fluid mass, which, under the pressure of the Earth’s outer crust and immediately next to the Vaporous Stratum, is the embodiment of Forces of high explosive powers held in leash only by the dense outer crust.

**Third division.**—The Vaporous Stratum, which may be said to be the seat of the pulsating life forces of the planet.

**Fourth division**—The Water Stratum. Rosicrucians are taught that from Water “came forth all the visible forms of life upon the surface of the Earth and in the Deep.” In this Water Stratum are the latent, embryonic potentialities for future manifestation. It is thus a storehouse of archetypal forces of the Mineral Kingdom, and the base from which operate the Group Spirits in their direction of the life forms entrusted to them, as they manifest upon the Earth.

**Fifth division.**—The Seed Stratum, in which are the seeds of origins of all “FORMS” that have existed or will in future exist upon the Earth. It is really a stratum of intensest life activity, for it has been emphasized that Life has always existed. Form only, was created, and it is from this Stratum that the primal forms were evolved and vivified with life energy.

**Sixth division.**—The Fiery Stratum, which is the seat of sensation of the Earth itself. This is the Stratum in which the Earth feels pleasure when its vegetation is gathered for the sustenance of humankind and relief at the breaking up of its mineral crystallization due to the activities of Man and Nature Forces, many of which have been indicated in this Instruction. Heindel very appropriately observes that “creation groaning and travailing, waiting for the day of liberation” mentioned by St. Paul, is the condition of the Great Spirit incarnated within the crystallized body of the planet, waiting until its labors shall have been completed, Humanity progressed to other Days of Manifestation and its own planetary liberation effected.<sup>27</sup>

**Seventh division.**—The Reflecting Stratum in which are reflected at all times the exact status of humanity upon the Earth. This is the seat of the so-called “Laws of Nature” comprehended as comparatively moral and immoral as Humanity advances in understanding. In this stratum the constituent structure grows more and more attenuated.

**Eighth division.**—The Atomic Stratum, the properties of which are to multiply and reproduce to a remarkable degree any thing that has definite form. This Stratum therefore is the base from which comes the multiplication of types, species and classes of all that we cognize in mundane manifestation.

**Ninth division.**—This Stratum is known as the “Fundament of the Magister,” the seat of the intelligent direction and thought force of the Master of the Earth-Temple, the Indwelling Spirit or Regent. The forces here operative correspond to the Cerebral, Cardiac and Sex Forces of Humanity.

**Tenth division.**—The Centrum. The Center of all that is upon and in the Earth, corresponding to the vital parts of the Earth Regent, the Holy of Holies; the Center of Equilibrium or Heart of the Logos Incarnate; the “Sacred Heart” or ROSE, epitome of our planetary evolutionary creative processes.

**Strata and World-Region correspondences.**—These different strata correspond to the World Regions as follows:

- 1st. Stratum to the Chemical Region of the Physical World.
- 2nd. Stratum to the Etheric Region of the Physical World.
- 3rd. Stratum to the Astral World Region.
- 4th. Stratum to the Concrete Division of the Thought World.
- 5th. Stratum to the Abstract Division of the Thought World.
- 6th. Stratum to the World of Life Spirit.
- 7th. Stratum to the World of Divine Spirit.
- 8th. Stratum to the World of Virgin Spirit.
- 9th. Stratum to the World of God.
- 10th. Stratum to the ABSOLUTE.

The Strata also correspond to the Degrees and Grades of Initiation as formulated and practiced in the Rosicrucian Order as follows:

**Rosicrucian Degrees and Earth Strata.—**

**1st Grade.**

- 1st. Stratum, to the Zelator Degree.
- 2nd. Stratum, to the Theoricus Degree.
- 3rd. Stratum, to the Practicus Degree.
- 4th. Stratum, to the Philosophus Degree.

**2nd. Grade.**

- 5th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Junior Degree.
- 6th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Senior Degree.
- 7th. Stratum, to the Adeptus Exemptus Degree.

**3rd. Grade.**

- 8th. Stratum, to the Magister Templi.
- 9th. Stratum, to the Pr.'.C.'.Adept.
- 10th. Stratum, to the Spiritual Initiation.

**Interpenetration of Auras.**—It has already been noted how the auras of planets interpenetrate. Likewise do the auras of the Planetary Regents contact each other to a large extent. Thus, in arranging the various planetary modifications the Regent of Earth, for instance, is able to avail himself of the co-operative powers of other planetary Regents as such assistance may be desirable. In this way, i. e., through these auric interpenetrations and contacts, Martian, Venusian, Jupiterian and Saturnine influences are brought to bear upon the Earth life as occasion may require.

**Seven Spirits before the Throne; All is Crystallized "Space."**  
—The Planetary Spirits of the Seven Planets of our Solar System are the "Seven Spirits before the Throne" of Scripture. Their principal activities are enlisted in the prevention of too great materialization or crystallization, as heretofore stated, of the planet itself entrusted to each individual Spirit. FORMS are the crystal-

lizations around the negative pole of spirit, and the action of the Regent or Planetary Spirit is to prevent this crystallization from reaching to an extent prohibitive of further evolutionary progress. The extent to which this crystallization has already proceeded may be comprehended when we look out upon sea or land and realize that *all* are in reality crystallizations of space, i. e., invisible primordial substance.

**Where the Ego functions.**—It also gives Man an opportunity to estimate his wondrous position in the scale of being, when as a spiritual scientist he understands that he himself, as an EGO, functions at all times in the substance of the Abstract regional planes of the World of Thought.

**Chaos still with us; Old Forms and New.**—Chaos is not altogether a condition of the remote past, by any manner of means. It is still about us, and to some extent within us, for the work and process of organization of the perfected vehicles in all the Kingdoms of the Life Stream is still active. The complete organization and perfection of our own Solar System is still incalculably remote. Old Forms that have served their purpose and are now relatively useless are being contributed to the exterior, primal Chaos, and from the Matter and Substance of Chaos new Forms are, under the direction of the Hierarchies, Lords and now evolving Humanities, being constantly built and rebuilt from this "OLD Matter."

**All things come "From the Center."**—But since the Incarnation, this process of building from Chaos, instead of being carried on from the outside, is directed and prosecuted under the guidance of the Earth Regent within. All creative process now comes "from the Center." The diagram shows this central guidance by the position of the symbolic or allegoric head of the Earth Regent being in the exact Center. (Page 59.)

**The price of too swift progress.**—Humanity, however, itself subject to the dangers of too rapid crystallization, has paid the price of its swift progress. As Adam and Eve in the Biblical allegory were promised wisdom and knowledge, and the power to become as Gods if they would only eat of the Forbidden Fruit, so Mankind since eating of the Forbidden Fruit of the sensuous plane of Creative Activity has become almost as the Gods. As St. Paul said, he is "a little lower than the Angels."

**Death, Disease and Pain.**—Humanity accepted and chose materialism instead of the purely spiritual status of life. It is like the

child who refuses parental guidance and insists on learning the lessons of life and its mysteries at an early age, before maturity, and then unintentionally learns the sorrows as well. Humanity has learned many of the mysteries which it should have grown to, not grasped, and now pays the penalty of Crystallization of its Spiritual Nature; Death, Disease and Pain.

**When Childbirth was Painless.**—In the blissful state of spiritual innocence, under the guidance of the Spiritual Powers who knew the proper planetary and solar times therefor, childbirth was painless and a sheer joy, wherein the human creators realized somewhat of the joy of the celestial Creator in the process of reproducing his "own image."<sup>28</sup>

**Ease; "Original Sin"; Disease.**—The explanation of these penalties is simple. EASE consists of complete alignment with the higher spiritual powers. This state was enjoyed by Humanity in its beginnings as such. But when Man "knew" his wife sensuously, when Man "knew" the outside or physical world fully as such, where previously he had known it only in the dream consciousness, he immediately began to follow his own impulses, which, in their then untrained and awakened state, led him astray. These erroneous impulses formed habits that became established traits of his species and doomed his descendents to similar sufferings and penalties. This was the "Original Sin." He gratified his lower passions and all possible desires in a manner contrary to the guidance of the higher spiritual powers, hence his descendants must seek through long processes of "spiritual development" to regain that which was their inherent right by spiritual birth. Ease was lost, and in its place Man seeks pleasure as a respite from DISease.<sup>29</sup>

**Death; Anabolism, Katabolism and Metabolism.**—Therefore, when Man begins to live he also begins to die, for being born into an earth-life of disease, that very condition is the initial stage of death. The penalty of Man's obedience was that he should for a time lose the consciousness that his earth or mortal life was but the continuation of his spirit life. Therefore his consciousness after mortal or earth birth pertained only to his existent mortal life and became subjected to the influences of the astral region of desire, in which forces destructive of the physical vehicles are operative through their constant stimulus to impulsive activity without affording reconstructive measures and influences. The result was and is that Man's body under such operative influences begins to decay. For a time the anabolism or constructive pro-

cesses within the protoplasm restrain the tendency to katabolism or breaking down, but the general metabolism or metamorphic changes of the living matter is steady and continuous, paving the way from constructive to the destructive tendencies.<sup>30</sup>

**Anthropoids and Aborigines now use Lemurian Forms.**—In those early days of Man-in-the-making the penalty for disobedience of the spiritual laws was even keener than now, for instead of being able to build bodies or vehicles fitted to assist those who should come after them, their work was so imperfect that the old Forms returned by this ancient species of Humanity, notably the Lemurians, are today those of the aboriginal humans and anthropoids, and while in the immense time periods that have intervened, the best that we of the white race today can do, is to bequeath our more plastic, sensitized Forms to the use of those Egos now incarnate as Indian, Negro, Ethiopian, Malay and Mongolian.<sup>31</sup>

**Man's body formerly composed of Fire, Air and Water.**—Man's evolution has been a continuous process of crystallization. Man-in-the-making had at the outset a physical vehicle principally composed of Fire, Air and Water, with little Earth Substance. With the crystallizing process the density increased, and man was literally "brought down" from his more ethereal state to the Earth's crust, over which he had previously "floated" in a more finely organized manner.

**Fire Forces in Earth and Man.**—Were it not for the Fire Forces of Mother Earth under the control or direction of the Earth Regent, the crystallizing process of our planet would soon render it no longer habitable or capable of sustaining life. Were it not for the Fire Forces in every Human being the crystallizing of each homo would in due time render the physical vehicle unfit as a Human Temple of the Ego. The same process of vulcanism that casts forth the ashes and products of combustion from the planet perform a similar though microcosmic office for Man. Vulcanism is therefore a manifestation of the Divine power of Preservation made operative by the Solar Creator through all his works.

**Motions of Earth brought about by Deliberate Intent.**—We have studied the various motions of the Earth. Just why they should occur as they do, while explicable by the wisdom of academic science, has a greater significance for the occultist. The motions which give to mankind the alternation of day and night are not mere accidents of gravitational or gyroscopic forces. They are the result of DELIBERATE INTENT on the part of the Creative Hierarchies. While brought about by the processes known

and understood by physical science, the PURPOSE in establishing these laws and processes was primarily for the development of Humanity which required just such alternation of Light and Darkness. This is ably explained by Steiner: "The motions of the celestial bodies are regulated by the beings who inhabit them. The earth's motion, of which day and night are the result, was induced by the mutual relations of the various spirits superior to man.

**Day and night alternations.**—"The moon's motion had been brought about in the same way, in order that, after the separation of the moon from the earth, the Lords of Form might, by means of the revolution of the former around the latter, work upon the HUMAN BODY IN THE RIGHT WAY, and with the right rythm. The Ego and the Astral Body of Man now worked within the physical and etheric bodies by day; at night that activity ceased, for the Ego and the Astral Body then left the physical and etheric bodies and came wholly within the sphere of the Sons of Life, or Angels, the Sons of Fire, or Archangels, the Sons of Personality and the Lords of Form. Besides the Lords of Form, the Lords of Motion, Wisdom and the Thrones also included the physical and etheric bodies in their sphere of influence at this time. The injurious effects produced on Man by the errors of his Astral Body during the day, could thus be counterbalanced."<sup>32</sup>

**Fewer "Young Souls"; Equality.**—As time periods pass, the number of "young Souls," or those just at the beginning of human incarnations grows constantly less, and the number of reincarnates increases. For a very long time Humanity was largely composed of these two classes. These two classes were the progenitors of the differentiations in human evolution as we know it today. Always there are amongst us those who are in varying stages of advanced development; those who are beginning their higher progress approximately at present and those who are still far behind in the scale of evolution. Equality as an ideal is a lofty aspiration. Equality in evolution is at this stage of progress an impossibility. The great preponderance of Humanity today is incarnate.<sup>33</sup>

**When "Time" first appears.**—Occultly, "Time" is said to have begun for Earth with the Saturn Period. Prior to this Period all constructive process as it relates to our Earth is said to be included in the "Sphere of Duration." Akashically, progression of incident may always be studied, but time as an actual

measurement of progression is first applied to Earth conditions as they appear in the Saturn Period.<sup>34\*</sup>

**First Awakening of "Love" in Man-in-the-Making.**—In the next, or Sun Period, Creative Love makes its first appearance. In this Period, Great Beings known as the Lords of Love (The Seraphim) united their vibrations with those of the Sun rays, acting in conjunction with the Sons of Personality on the human Etheric vehicles, thus aiding in their progression. This united work gave to the Etheric vehicles the power of "transforming the gaseous forms within them" and of "so elaborating them that the first indications of a propagation of living human beings appear." In some way, something is segregated and driven out (as though exuded) from the gaseous organisms that have been formed, and is moulded into shapes resembling their mother-forms.<sup>35</sup>

**Luciferians; Fear.**—When Man assumed rulership over his own knowledge, he made the Astral Body the starting point. This made the Ego to be in future largely dependent upon the Astral Body and exposed Man to the temptations of his lower nature. This lower nature was greatly influenced by the "irregularly evolved" Moon-spirits known as the Lucifers or Luciferian Spirits. These spirits endowed Man with Freedom and latitude of activity in his individual consciousness, and by this very endowment created the differentiation between good and so-called "evil."<sup>36</sup> With this freedom came less of original clairvoyance and the consequent uncertainty of the future, and this uncertainty was the primary initiation of Fear in the Humanity-in-the-making, for fear is "a direct result of error."<sup>37</sup>

**Permanency of Love and Fear.**—It is a long step from lost Lemuria to the present day, but the advent of these primal emotions of Love and Fear into the then developing Humanity and even in its more tenuous existence in the Panic Times, shows the permanence of the elements which were built into the progenitors of the human species, for today these two, Love and Fear, are the basic elements of human emotionalism. We seek to develop the first to its spiritual status of idealistic perfection; the second we hope to conquer, but the struggle is long and arduous and success comes only to those who are willing to live the life originally intended for all Humanity, which at present means a life of trial, suffering and often crucifixion.

\*The Rosicrucian concept that Space and Time are non-existent in the spiritual worlds or regions is sometimes difficult to grasp. The student will gain much help in this matter if he follows carefully the expositions of the Einstein Theory of Relativity, in which both Time and Space are clearly seen

to be but purely relative conditions or expressions. Cosmically, there is no point of departure from which Time could possibly be measured or which could act as an initial state of origin. The same holds true regarding Space. On the mundane plane we effectually and essentially have terms of relative measurement and the same holds true of our solar system and the universe. But beyond the universe or among the universes what limits are imposed that can cosmically designate what we relatively term "Space"? The illustrations offered in support of this position and the subject itself are too exhaustive to treat in detail in a work of the present proportions, but the Einstein Theory is fast becoming more generally understood and data thereon can be easily procured.

### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 9

1. What is the popular concept regarding the shape of the Earth?
2. What more nearly approximates its true shape?
3. What is the difference between the polar and equatorial diameters?
4. What is the proportion of the water distribution on the Earth's surface?
5. What is the approximate area of continents and islands?
6. What illustration can you give showing the comparative dimensional features of the Earth?
7. What temperatures prevailed on the Earth during Archaean Times?
8. What is the substance and consistency of the center of the Earth?
9. What do the substantial center and the plastic stratum permit the Earth to do?
10. What is the resultant state of equilibrium called?
11. What are the sequence of events in a rotating mass?
12. How is the "pear shaped" figure of the Earth produced?
13. How do Rosicrucians regard all cosmogonic processes?
14. What is the Fifth Element?
15. How are the Elements understood by occultists?
16. What is said of the Seven Elements?

17. What is the chief function of Air?
18. What is the principal function of Water?
19. What illustration is given of Water as a carrier of solid matter?
20. How much silt does the Mississippi River contribute to the Gulf of Mexico annually?
21. What is said of the temperatures of the Earth's crust?
22. How is the Earth's heat derived?
23. Why is vulcanism so named?
24. What are the effects of the transformation of Motion into Heat?
25. How are volcanoes defined?
26. What examples can you name of the highest volcanoes?
27. How do volcanoes act in eruptions?
28. What is said of wind as a carrier of volcanic dust and particles?
29. What relation do earthquakes bear to vulcanism?
30. For what is the Pacific Slope of North America notable?
31. What do some occult writers believe the eruptions of Vesuvius signify?
32. Is vulcanism confined to the so-called Christian Era?
33. Has there been more or less volcanic activity since A. D.
34. Is vulcanism or any other cataclysm regarded by Rosicrucians as a "visitation of Providence"?
35. Why does the Earth Regent utilize vulcanism?
36. When did igneous eruptions begin and apparently end in Western North America?
37. When was the name "Volcano" first used?
38. What comparison is given between the periods of activity and inactivity of volcanoes?

39. What relation exists between Earth's Fire Forces and the Great War?
40. What and where is Magma?
41. What does the Magma constitute?
42. Name the sources of volcanic heat.
43. How does compressed gas act?
44. What are the proportions of the planetary constituents?
45. What relation do the planetesimals bear to volcanic heat?
46. How does radioactivity enter into vulcanism?
47. What are the "Points of coincidence"?
48. Name the ten divisions of the Earth's diameter, their correspondences and correlations.
49. Define each division.
50. How do the strata and world regions correspond?
51. How do the strata correspond to the Rosicrucian Initiations?
52. To what extent do planetary auras interpenetrate?
53. What are the Seven Spirits before the Throne?
54. Where does the human Ego function?
55. What is the status of Chaos?
56. Whence come all things since the Incarnation?
57. How has Humanity paid the price of too swift progress?
58. What was the "Forbidden Fruit"?
59. When was childbirth painless?
60. What is Ease? What is Original Sin? What is Disease?  
What is Death?
61. Give your understanding of Anabolism, Katabolism and Metabolism?
62. What forms do the aborigines and anthropoids now use?
63. How was Man's physical body formerly composed?

64. How do the Earth and Human Fire Forces correspond?
65. How were the Earth motions brought about?
66. What is the necessity for the alternations of day and night?
67. Are there more or less "young souls" on the earth today?
68. What is equality said to be?
69. When did "Time" first appear as relative to the Earth evolution?
70. When is the first awakening of Love said to have occurred?
71. Who were the Luciferians?
72. What did they do for Man?
73. How did Fear originate?
74. What is said of the permanency of Love and Fear?
75. What is our attitude toward them?
76. How is it to be accomplished?
77. What may such a life entail?



## INSTRUCTION X.

### LEMURIA AND ATLANTIS. TRANSITIONAL FORMS.

KARMA, LAWS OF CONSEQUENCE AND COMPENSATION;  
GUARDIAN OF THE THRESHOLD.

---

In the preceding instructions we have dwelt somewhat at length upon earth conditions and the planetary activities of the Regent, especially prior to the Great Incarnation and during the Lemurian and previous epochs.

In order to establish the correct sequence we shall begin this instruction with a consideration of some similar conditions existent in the Atlantean Epoch.

**Many Occultists fail to correlate.**—Many occult scientists and writers have given what purport to be detailed descriptions of both Lemurian and Atlantean life, but have failed to correlate such descriptions with the known and established time data of geological science. For this reason, we have not attempted in these Instructions to recapitulate all that has been previously written by genuine occult scientists and investigators, but rather, to correlate the teachings of Rosicrucian and physical science.

**Appearance of Atlantis.**—In Instruction No. 2 it is stated that Lemuria was destroyed about 10,417,000 years ago by volcanic action. The gradual entrance of Atlantis upon the scene of earth-evolution was accompanied by notable seismic upheavals and disturbances. In fact the whole life of Atlantis (which continent was finally destroyed by four volcanic and seismic cataclysms) was notable for the prevalence and extent of earthquakes on a scale far greater than any known to ancient or modern historians.

**Causes of Earthquakes.**—These were due to the more plastic condition of the Earth's outer crust, the percolation and seeping of water into the fluid, fiery stratum immediately below and the consequent explosions internally resulting therefrom, establishing veins and pockets of steam reservoirs. Earthquakes, generally speaking, arise from subterraneous rock fractures, due to the sol-

vent action of water which results in their undermining, extrusion of lava from volcanic activity and the unequal contraction of the Earth's crust.<sup>1</sup>

**What Prof. Dana said.**—It is a notable testimony to the invisible causes of visible effects sought by occultism, when the eminent geologist, Prof. James D. Dana, LL.D., wrote—"But none of the causes that have been considered (by academic science) explain the great changes of level involving large parts of continents or of oceanic areas, or the phenomena attending the making and uplifting of mountain ranges, or the earthquakes that HAVE SHAKEN A HEMISPHERE."<sup>2</sup>



FIG. 36  
RIVER MARKS, SHOWING SUBSIDENCE OF WATERS IN THE  
ST. LAWRENCE BASIN, NEAR BEAUPRE, P. Q.

(Photo by Parsell.)

**Nothing is left to "work itself out."**—Here Rosicrucian science teaches that as nothing happens by chance and that natural forces and powers once set in operation by primal causes are not left to "work themselves out" in a haphazard way, so in order to ascertain the real reason for such cataclysms the occult student must first seek the REASON WHY SUCH CONDITIONS AS RESULT THEREFROM ARE NECESSARY, and whether such resultant conditions could have been brought about in any other way.

The “necessity” for changes in the Earth’s crust becomes apparent when we realize that the requisite conditions and opportunities for life, growth, development and improvement must be provided for the rapidly evolving life waves on the planet, and that unless such conditions were being constantly provided to meet the effects produced by changing climates, atmospheric and meteorological states, hardening, crystallizing and intensifying of the Earth’s crust and the chemical transmutations being wrought in Mineral, Vegetable and Animal Kingdoms, there would long since have been established a barrier of finality to Man’s evolution on this planet.

**Character of the means employed.**—The “means” for effecting such changes as were necessary must be planetary in their nature and scope, for Man himself would have been absolutely incapable of effecting them, nor would he have had the wisdom to realize their necessity. Here the evidence of a “superior wisdom” is clearly shown, and that wisdom existing, and being of a solar and even cosmic nature and scope, it was and is obliged to utilize cosmic, solar and planetary processes to effect the manifestation of its plans. These were the “plans laid down on the Trestle Board of the Great Architect,” and now carried out by his immediate Workmen and Builders, the Regents to whom the building of our own and many other Earths has been entrusted.

**Additional proof of movement from the North Pole.**—Among the topographic changes wrought in the Earth’s crust and surface we have, in the “Drift” or deposits of transported material spread

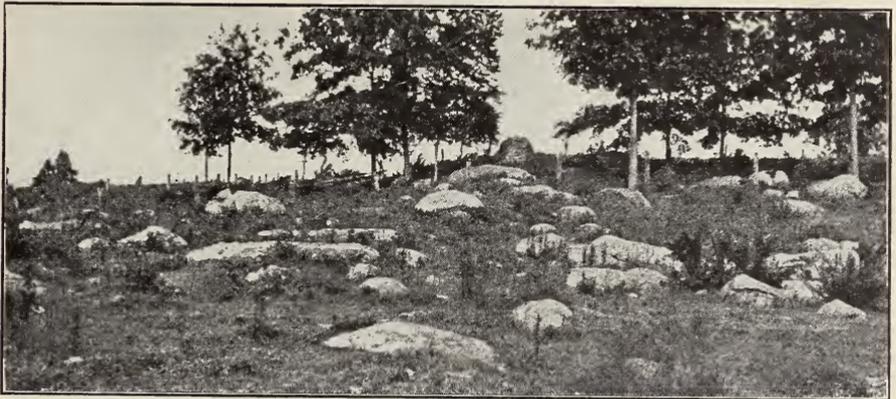


FIG. 37  
A TYPICAL NEW ENGLAND BOULDER FIELD. PHOTO TAKEN  
NEAR STONINGTON, CONN.  
*(Photo by Parsell.)*

over the continent by the Glacial carriers, another proof of the gradual movement from the North Pole to the Equator of many evidences of the first gradual cooling and crustal changes previously described.



FIG. 38  
THE GREAT BOULDER AT MADISON, N. H.  
*(Photo by Parsell.)*

**New Hampshire Boulders.**—Some of the most notable of the stones so transported are called “boulders.” One of these, in Not-



FIG. 39  
SUMMIT OF MOUNT WASHINGTON, N. H. SEEN FROM  
THE TRAIL FROM GLEN.  
*—(Photo by Shorey, Gorham, N. H.)*

tingham, New Hampshire, is 62, 40 and 40 feet in its several diameters, and its weight is estimated at about 6,000 tons. Another, in Madison, New Hampshire, has an estimated weight of 7,650 tons.<sup>3</sup> The fact that boulders are found at the summit of Mount Washington, a place especially esteemed by Rosicrucians in America, is proof that the altitude of the upper surface of the glaciers in that region was between 6,000 and 6,500 feet, and



FIG. 40  
 "SPLIT ROCK" BOULDER. GLACIAL. NEAR  
 MATTAPOISETT, MASS. *(Photos by Parsell.)*



FIG. 41  
 VIEW OF "SPLIT ROCK" SHOWING SIZE OF OPENING  
 COMPARED WITH A MAN.

therefore the ice must have been at least 5,000 feet thick over that part of what is now known as New England.<sup>4</sup>

**Man-in-the-Making; Fear of Reptiles.**—We have already made mention, and repeat it here, that when speaking of Man and Races in the Lemurian and previous epochs it must be remembered that we do not speak of Man as we know him to be since the beginning of recorded history, but rather of “Man-in-the-making.” It is important to keep this fact in mind, for man today is a complex being, preserving within his “Cosmic Memory” the experience he underwent in the long ages before he became a true homo. This is particularly shown in the instinctive dread, fear and hatred of serpents and reptiles by over 90% of humanity. This fear is an atavism, brought down from an early part of the Atlantean Epoch.

This fear of reptiles is attributed by scientists, and we believe rightly, to the assaults and encroachments by the reptiles on the more highly evolving species, which developed among all the higher species an instinctive defence against the reptile types and resistance to their assaults. This became more pronounced and highly developed among the anthropoids and was thus communicated to the evolving human species.

**Atlantis, Home of Gigantic Reptiles.**—It was the Atlantean Epoch that gave to evolving life forms the gigantic reptilia, and it is this same inherited cosmic memory and knowledge of them that gives to those scientists who devote special study to this department of palaeontological science, the ability to reconstruct, sometimes from a single tooth, the exact similitude of the original form.

**Alberta and the Saskatchewan.**—These gigantic lizards and reptiles roamed largely over the uninhabited areas of Atlantis, and while we may not hope to recover more than vestigial remains of the exact species indigenous to the more southern parts of the continent, we are able to gain a clear concept of them from the remains found in Canadian North America. Here, in the region adjacent to Alberta, the miniature canyon of the Saskatchewan reveals four distinct geological periods, and in these layers are preserved the fossil remains of animals and plants existent about 3,000,000 years ago. These reptiles were both flesh and herb eaters, but all shared certain characteristics in common and were known as the Dinosaurs. Some of the species are listed herewith:

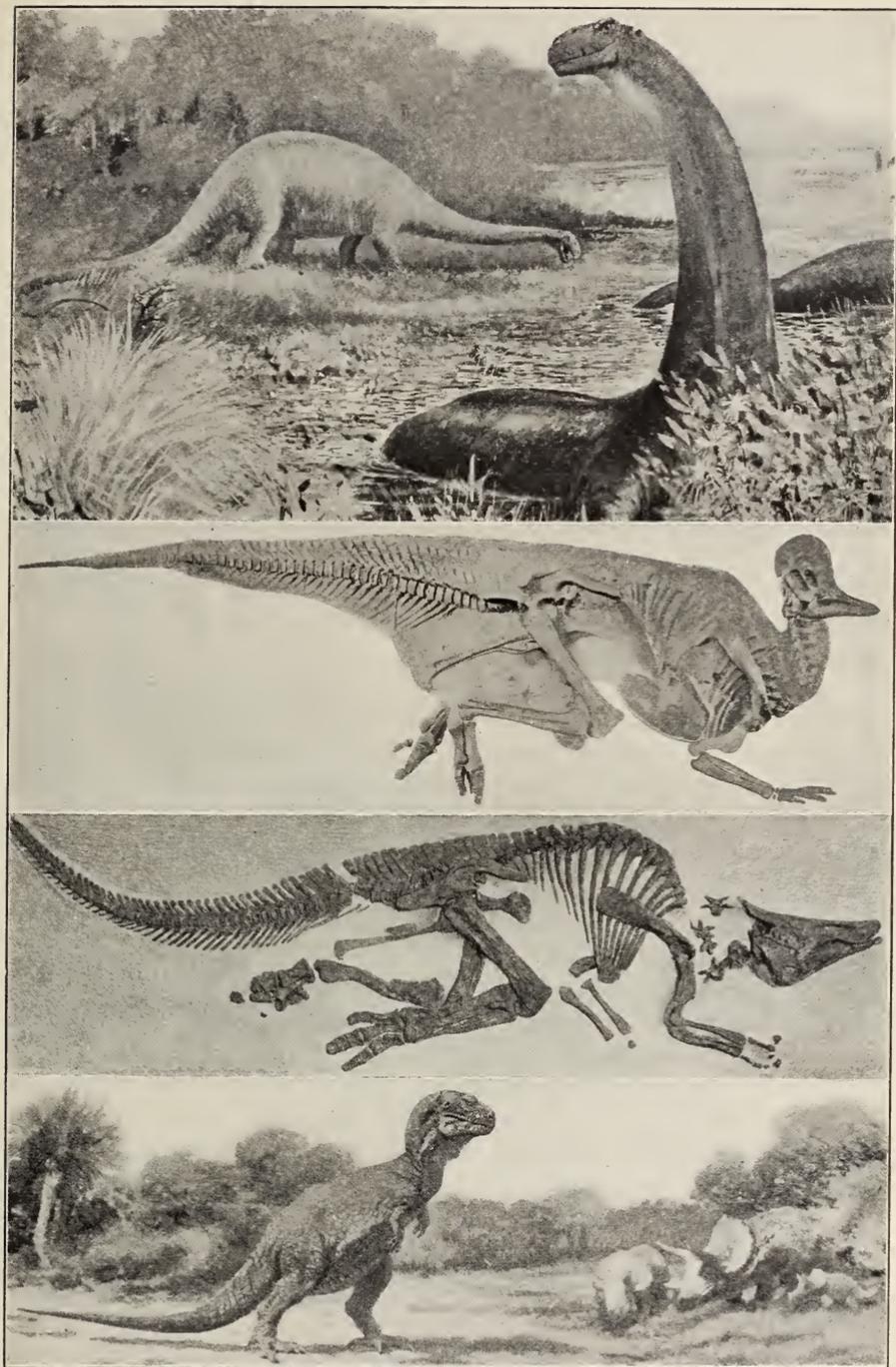


FIG. 42 TYPES OF THE DINOSAURS.—No. 1, Upper, Brontosaurus; 2, Corythosaurus Casaurius, skeleton slab mount, right side; 3, Saurolophus; 4, lower, Tyrannosaurus and Triceratops. (Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Species of the Dinosaurs.—**

1. The Trachodon, 30 ft. long by 15 ft. high. Herb-eater, Duck-billed.
2. The Ornithomimus, 12 ft. long. Food Crustaceans.
3. Monoclonius, skull 6 ft. long. Horned ancestor of the
4. Triceratops, 25 ft. long.
5. Ankylosaurus, stocky, short-legged, heavy-bodied. Armored.
6. Albertosaurus, 30 ft. long by 15 ft. high. Flesh-eater.
7. Saurolophus.
8. Corythosaurus, Crested Dinosaur.
9. Hypacrosaurus, Long-spined Dinosaur.<sup>5</sup>
10. The ocean correspondence was the Ichthyosaurus.
11. The Brontosaurus.
12. Tyrannosaurus, etc., etc.

**Canadian climate like that of Florida today.**—The region in which these fossil remains are found was once the bed of a vast inland sea, when North America was vastly different in conformation from what it is now. Likewise, the region now known as Southern Canada then had a climate much like that which Florida in the Everglade region has today.

To the Rosicrucian a study of Humanity as a whole will reveal in the units of the species the natures, traits and many characteristics peculiar to all the types and species of the lower Kingdoms of Life, and the atavistic persistence of many tendencies in the homo, inherited not alone from his racial ancestors but from the multiform types of Mineral-Man, Vegetable-Man and Animal-Man, is excellent proof of his continuous existence throughout a remote Past and a prediction of his continuous existence throughout an infinite Future.

In the prehistoric reptilia of ancient Atlantis, the types distinguished between flesh and herb-eaters, the armored species, pugnacious, warlike, and those of a gentleness comparable to that of the modern dog, will be found on careful study to furnish us with excellent illustrations of the earliest manifestations of those characteristics which were to be later observed in the earliest expressions of the true homo, and perpetuated, with modifications, throughout all races, tribes and groups.

**Patriarchs lived in the consciousness of their descendants.**—We read in the Older Scriptures of the great ages to which the Patriarchs attained. Many well intentioned folk accept such ages literally as given. As a matter of fact, the Patriarchs did not

live much longer than, even if as long, as do the present races who live in a state close to Nature. Their great ages consisted in the fact that after so-called physical death, they lived in the consciousness of their tribal descendants, and thus living, the descendants were always conscious of the continued existence of their ancestors. This is an illustration of the practical operation of the Cosmic Memory. (Gen. v.) It was not impossible that Enoch begat Methuselah at the age of sixty-five years, but it is far from the known processes of protoplasm to conceive that Methuselah begat Lamech at the age of one hundred and eighty-seven years,



FIG. 43  
ORNITHOLESTES SEIZING AN ARCHAEOPTERYX.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

or that he lived to the age of nine hundred and sixty-nine years. Such a long life IN THE CONSCIOUSNESS OF HIS DESCENDANTS was not only possible but probable, and this very possibility made also possible the correct perpetuation of religious and esoteric traditions throughout many centuries, before writing was introduced.

**Ego not fully indrawn in early Atlantis.**—In the early part of the Atlantean Epoch the Ego had not yet fully indrawn and assumed full control over its vehicles, and the blood, being the

particular vehicle of the Ego, but with the latter not fully functioning therein as yet, was utilized by the Racial and Family Group Spirits of the early homos to perpetuate the consciousness of the species as it differentiated from that of the three preceding Kingdoms. Memory, it will be observed, is a prerogative only of the Human Kingdom.

**Sight, the Gift of the Atlantean Epoch.**—As the greatest aid to consciousness on the external plane, sight was the gift to Man of the Atlantean Epoch. Prior to this epoch and during his Lemurian existence he had no eyes as those organs are now known. He had instead two sense centers which were highly sensitive to the extreme light conditions of his time, and just as throughout all Nature organisms develop special organs in response to exterior

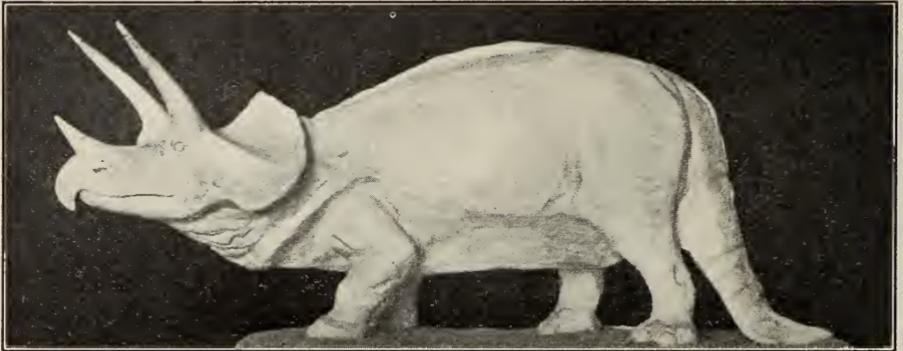


FIG. 44  
TRICERATOPS.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

environment, under the very Law of Adaptation to Environment, so the eyes as well defined organs were developed during the Atlantean Epoch.

**How Man first “knew” his Wife.**—Lemurian Man first “knew” his wife or opposite sex polarity through the personal contact of the sex function, but his consciousness was of an interior spiritual nature. Atlantean Man was the first to know the physical world as an objective reality through the development of sight and the stream of consciousness that translated sight sense perception.

**Lemurians had no Memory.**—Lemurian Man had no memory, for his consciousness being as stated, of an interior nature, was as yet in the transitional state between the dream consciousness

of the animal and the full waking consciousness that reached its fullest extent during the Atlantean Epoch. Sight and Memory therefore are the two great developments in Man during this Epoch.

**Extent and Orders of the Reptilian Era.**—While the gigantic reptiles previously mentioned are the product of the Atlantean Epoch, their prototypes originated in the latter part of the Lemurian. The entire Reptilian Era was of about 12,000,000 years



FIG. 45

TRACHODON, (*Rearing*) COMPARED WITH THE HUMAN FIGURE.  
(*Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.*)

duration, and numbered eighteen great Orders. Of these Orders, only five exist today, the

- Turtles (*Testudinata*)
- Tuateras (*Rhynchocephalia*).
- Lizards (*Lacertilia*).
- Snakes (*Ophidia*).
- Crocodiles (*Crocodylia*).

**Only five survive.**—Prof. Osborn says: “The evolution of these five surviving orders has either been extremely slow, or entirely arrested during the 3,000,000 years which are generally assigned to Tertiary time; we can distinguish only by relatively minor changes the turtles and crocodiles of the base of the Tertiary from those living today.

Early Life Forms now degenerating; *that Kingdom ended.*—“In other words, during this period of 3,000,000 years THE ENTIRE PLANT WORLD, THE INVERTEBRATE WORLD, THE FISH, THE AMPHIBIAN AND THE REPTILIAN WORLDS HAVE ALL REMAINED AS RELATIVELY BALANCED, STATIC, UNCHANGED OR PERSISTENT TYPES, WHILE THE MAMMALS (types that suckle their young; having breasts), RADIATING 3,000,000 YEARS AGO FROM VERY SMALL, INCONSPICUOUS FORMS, HAVE UNDERGONE A PHENOMENAL EVOLUTION, spreading into every geographic region formerly occupied by the reptilia and passing through multitudinously varied phases not only of direct, but of alternating and reversed evolution.”<sup>6</sup>

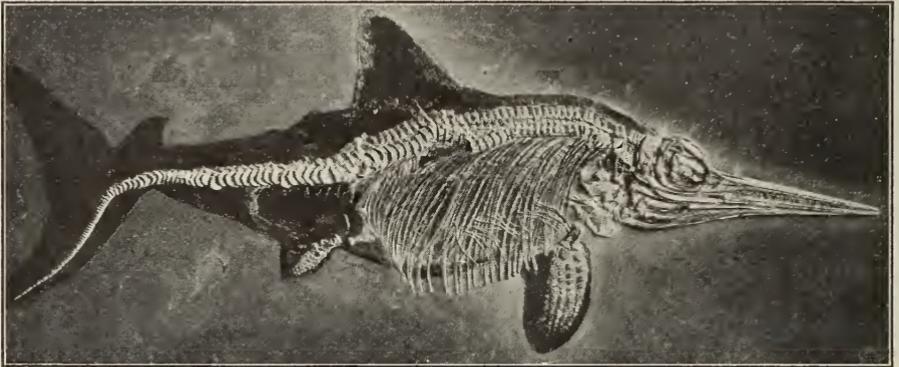


FIG. 46  
 ICHTHYOSAUR'S QUADRICISSUS. SKELETON SHOWING COMPLETE OUTLINES OF BODY, PADDLES AND FINS.  
 FROM THE JURASSIC SLATES OF HOLZ-  
 MADEN IN WURTEMBERG, GERMANY.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Progress of the Mammalia; Laggards and Stragglers.**—Here Rosicrucian and physical science again unite, for the Rosicrucian knows that evolution is a continuous process, and that any life form must go forward or begin its disintegration as a form or kingdom. Thus the reptilia are to the Rosicrucian an interesting study of an organic life wave, which, having reached its epitome, is now slowly, through the leisurely processes of Nature, in its disintegration. On the other hand, the Rosicrucian sees in the progress of the mammalia the true evolutionary process, slowly incarnating the life wave of the disintegrating kingdom or species and carrying it on to higher forms and planes. And we also witness the phenomena of alternating and reversed evolutions, for the

former is easily discernible in the lower types, while of the latter we have an instance in the anthropoids, the present members of which are degenerate types, they as well as some human aborigines evolving (apparently and temporarily) downward. We say

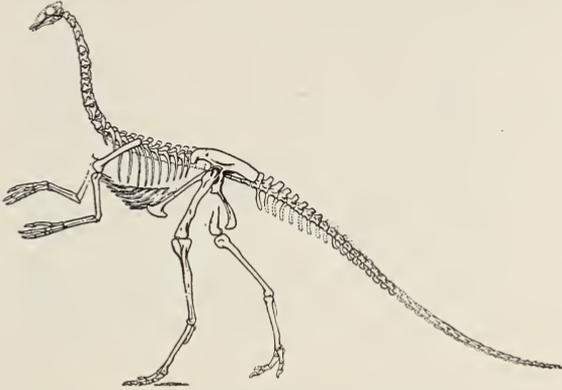


FIG. 47

ORNITHOMIMUS. THE "LIGHT LIMBED, BIRD-LIKE, TOOTH-  
LESS, "OSTRICH" DINOSAUR, *STRUTHIOMIMUS*  
AFTER OSBORN.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

temporarily, for the Rosicrucian sees in these degenerates the laggards in human evolution and knows that future human evolutionary waves will take up and carry onward these "stragglers."

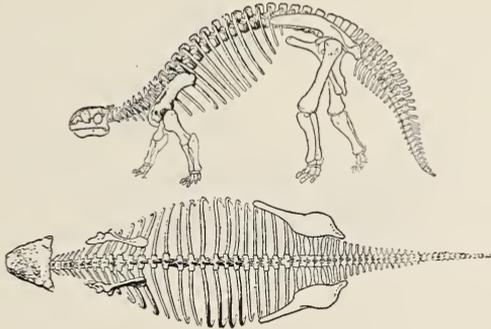


FIG. 48

ANKYLOSAURUS MAGNIVENTRES. DORSAL AND  
SIDE SKELETON.

(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Origin of the Birds (Aves).**—It is a far cry from the Gigantosauros (Brachiosauros), sometimes over 100 feet in length, with huge shoulder and forearm, the quadrupedal type like the Brontosaurus and the Diplodocus, with its long, slender neck and tail,

swift moving; the carnivorous Tyrannosaurus and the Stegosaurus, to man of today, but every species has contributed through its development in the higher phases of the Animal Kingdom to give to Man his ability to fight, seek and procure food, maintain



FIG. 49  
DECKERT'S RESTORATION OF THE MONOCLONIUS.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

his right to it and to conquer even the Elements, for it must be remembered that from the lizard-like reptilia came the birds. And from the birds Man received his inspiration to conquer the

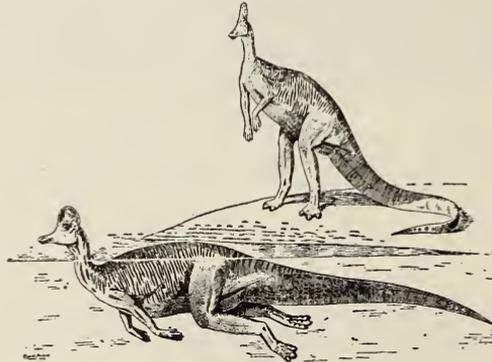


FIG. 50  
DECKERT'S RESTORATION OF THE CORYTHOSAURUS.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

air, in which he has been successful, and in the same progressional manner as the remote originators of the birds (Aves).

**“Offensive and Defensive Energy Complexes.”**—In the study of the reptilia, we find the natural provisions for offense developed. Opposed to the Tyrannosaurus was the Ceratopsia, or

horned herbivorous dinosaur (related to the Stegosaurus and the Iguanodontia). Similarly to the Tiger and Lion are opposed the horned animals. In the Human Kingdom to those who fight with the crude weapons of brute force are opposed those who fight subtly and successfully with the powers of mind and intellect. It is a matter of "Offensive and Defensive Energy Complexes." (Osborn).

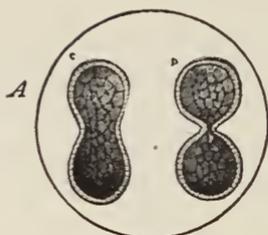
**Antiquity of the Aves.**—Incidentally we may observe in passing that the birds originated in the late Permian or early Triassic times from a small "lizard-like reptile of partly bipedal habit and remotely related to the bipedal ancestors of the dinosaurs" and entered into a terrestrio-aboreal mode of life, probably for purposes of safety.<sup>7</sup> These ancient birds are known as the Archaeopteryx and had claws at the ends of the bones of the wings to enable them to hang from trees. The first form was the four winged, in which the hind legs evolved wings. As the power of flight evolved, the two hind leg wings degenerated, the forearm wings developed, as also the rudder functions of the spreading tail feathers.

**Tetrapteryx.**—The four wing phase was known as the Tetrapteryx. The lateral scales gradually became transformed into long primary feathers.

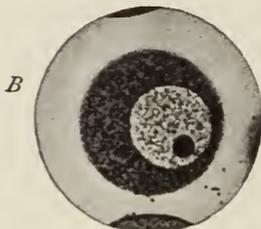
Our principal reason for describing somewhat in detail these purely physical conditions pertaining to both the Lemurian and Atlantean Epochs is to enable the student to trace the origins of so many traits and tendencies in the Human Kingdom which would be otherwise almost inexplicable.

**Study of Origins a Study of Consciousness in Evolution.**—The study of such origins is really a study of the evolution of consciousness and reason. The latter term is often defined as "the faculty of the mind by which man draws conclusions, and determines right and truth."<sup>8</sup> This is a definition not altogether satisfying to the Rosicrucian, for he knows that Mind itself is not as yet an organized or perfected vehicle, and this is proved by the further definition that reason may sometimes be irrational and absurd. It is rather the ability to co-ordinate in the waking consciousness the impacts of sense perception.

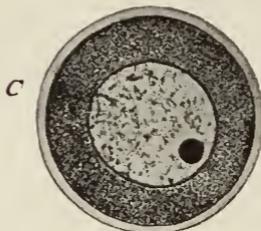
**Intelligence of Divine origin.**—However, it will be observed that each succeeding evolutionary step is an amplification, enlargement and development of the consciousness of the preceding stage of life expression, in which the natures, properties, attributes and



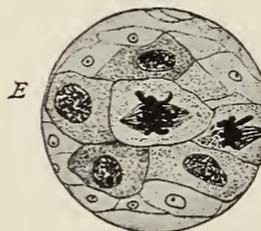
A—*Achromatin* with network of chromatin threads. An organism of the bacteria type.



B, C—Single celled eggs from the ovaries of a sea-urchin. The chromatin is here shown concentrated into a black dot within the nucleolus.



D—Multicellular group from an onion root-tip. The chromatin is shown in the black, wavy and irregular formations.



E—Multicellular group from the embryo of a California giant Redwood Tree. The solid blacks show the chromatin; the thin lines the cell boundaries, and the dots the protoplasm.

—(From Osborn "Origin and Evolution of Life," after Lawson.)

FIG. 51

CHROMATIN AND PROTOPLASM CONTRASTED.

Protoplasm is the principal *visible* substance of the growing cell. Chromatin is the principal *visible* center of heredity.

In this illustration, the Protoplasm is shown by the grayish and dotted areas and the Chromatin by the black, wavy rods, and other shapes. A-C represents the single cell; D-E cell clusters.

tendencies are preserved and expressed with greater freedom and increasing orderliness and intelligence, for through all the stages of Life there is a certain latent, inherent intelligence, otherwise we should be obliged to postulate that the Absolute and its immediate Expressions, of which all life forms are primordially emanations, was unintelligent, which is unthinkable. The unfoldment of consciousness is the unfoldment of the Divine Intelligence and Reason.

**How Consciousness is "carried over."**—How is the consciousness of one Kingdom preserved and carried over into the next succeeding stage? It is effected through the persistence of the archetypal forms developed in the Thought-world under the Creative Hierarchs on the esoteric or spiritual side, and by the basic elements through which the life-wave manifests on the physical side.

**Protoplasm and Chromatin.**—In regard to the latter, the two principal factors are Protoplasm, which has already been mentioned, and Chromatin, of equal importance. As to which is the most ancient has long been a matter of dispute between biologists and bacteriologists, with the balance of favor resting on protoplasm. The latest investigations and researches into cytology and protistology seem, however, to "indicate that CHROMATIN ELEMENTS REPRESENT THE PRIMARY AND ORIGINAL LIVING UNITS OF INDIVIDUALS"<sup>9</sup> and that Protoplasm is the secondary product. Here, from an investigation of the purely physical side, we find the spiritual and the physical revealed in unity, as true Hermeticism teaches it should be found.

**Earth made for Man.**—Many times has occult science affirmed that the Earth was made for Man, not Man for the Earth, except as heretofore stated, that Man might "dress the garden and keep it," that is, take charge of it after it was concreted for his use, and develop it for the future evolution of his own species in higher expression. Therefore, it is to be expected that without the spiritual element we should not look successfully for a physical origin. In Chromatin we find the Spiritual Unity. In Protoplasm we find the Physical Vehicle, and both will be found co-existent in cell formation from the earliest known stages.

**Seat of Heredity.**—From research into the functional and chemical separation of the Chromatin we now know Protoplasm to be the EXPRESSION, and Chromatin to be the SEAT of HEREDITY which is the modus of preservation and perpetuation of unit manifestations of the life-wave, and thus has a physicochemical basis.<sup>10</sup>

**Distribution of Chromatin; Protozoa and Metazoa.**—Applying this truth to our knowledge of the cell, the nucleus may be said to contain the “physical basis of inheritance, and that the Chromatin is its essential constituent.”<sup>11</sup> According to Prof. Osborn, “In the development from unicellular (Protozoa) into multicellular (Metazoa) organisms the Chromatin is distributed through the nuclei to all the cells of the body.” In this process, as Boveri has demonstrated, “all the body cells lose a portion of their chromatin and only the germ cells retain the entire ancestral heritage.”<sup>12</sup>

**Phosphoric constituency; the visible center of Energy Heredity.**—The notable chemical characteristic of Chromatin, as compared with Protoplasm, is Phosphorus, again identifying it with the faculties of Man which depend to a large degree upon the phosphorus constituents of the organism through which consciousness is made possible. And as we should expect, we find that the chemical, molecular and atomic constituency of Chromatin is infinitely more complex than that of any other form of matter known to science. “It is the VISIBLE CENTER of the energy complex of heredity, the larger part of which is by its nature INVISIBLE. Chromatin, although within our microscopic vision, is to be conceived as a gross manifestation of the infinite energy complex of heredity which is a COSMOS IN ITSELF.”<sup>13</sup>

**Development of the Individual.**—According to these findings, the continuous progress of the Life-wave since its first manifestation in Archaeozoic time is the progression of the physicochemical energies of the Chromatin, “THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE INDIVIDUAL LIFE IS AN UNFOLDING OF THE ENERGIES TAKEN WITHIN THE BODY UNDER THE DIRECTING AGENCY OF THE CHROMATIN (or Spiritual Principle in manifestation) AND THE EVOLUTION OF LIFE IS ESSENTIALLY THE EVOLUTION OF THE CHROMATIN ENERGIES.”<sup>14</sup>

**Size of a Hydrogen Atom.**—The lightest known atom is that of Hydrogen, with an average diameter of 1/100,000,000 of a centimeter, with negatively charged particles or electrons of about 1/1,800 of the atom mass, travelling with velocities ranging from 10,000 to over 100,000 miles per second. Now the most compact type of Chromatin is the sperm-nucleus of the sea-urchin and is about 1/100,000,000 of a cubic millimeter in bulk. The sphere of activity of an atom is about 1/100,000,000 of a centimeter, or in other words, 1/10,000,000 of a millimeter.

**Chromatin a Miniature Cosmos.**—Chromatin will thus be seen to be a miniature cosmos, including fiercely “acting, interacting and reacting”<sup>15</sup> particles, an evidence of its tremendous power and potency.

Physical science admits its ignorance “as to how the Chromatin responds to the actions, reactions and interactions of the body cells, of the life environment and of the physical environment, so as to call forth a new adaptive character<sup>16</sup> unless it be through some infinitely complex system of chemical messengers and other catalytic agencies.”<sup>17</sup>

In studying the evolution of life upon our planet, we must keep constantly in mind the fundamental biologic law that “the causes of evolution are to be sought within four complexes of energies, which are partly visible and partly invisible, namely:

**Fundamental Biological Law.—**

1. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the physical environment;
2. Physicochemical energies in the individual development of the organism, namely, of its protoplasm **CONTROLLED AND DIRECTED BY ITS CHROMATIN;** Selection and Elimination. Incessant competition, selection, intraselection (Roux) and elimination between all parts of organisms in their chromatin energies, in their protoplasmic energies and in their actions, reactions and interactions with the living environment and with the physical environment.
3. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the heredity-chromatin with its constant addition of new powers and energies;
4. Physicochemical energies in the evolution of the life environment, beginning with the protocellular chemical organisms, and such intermediate organisms as bacteria, and followed by such organisms, cellular and multicellular, as the higher plants and animals.<sup>18</sup>

**Inter-reaction between the Visible and the Invisible.**—In this tabulation by Prof. Osborn the inter-reaction between the visible and the invisible is clearly apparent once the spiritual nature of the Chromatin is understood, and its office as a vehicle through which the directing energies of the Spiritual Powers guiding all evolutionary process is recognized.

**Algae as Earth-Builders.**—Thus the importance of Protoplasm and Chromatin as builders, preservers and perpetuators from cellular structure is shown, just as we also recognize the importance of true Algae as the “earth-forming powers of life.”

**Chlorophyll.**—As bacterial forms derive their energy from the geosphere or solid earth as distinguished from water and air, and also from the hydrosphere, the principal agent for seeking life in the atmosphere is Chlorophyll, which collects carbon from its union with oxygen in carbon dioxide. This it does by utilizing the energy of sunlight, and this power of the chlorophyll in algae is one of the most important operations in nature. All Color in the four Kingdoms is deposited by the forces which work along the negative pole of the Light Ether, and this is said to be one of the reasons why plants and animals have most color on the side turned towards the sun. It is also one of the agencies in furnishing their “camouflage” or protecting coloring to animals, birds and insects.

**How Plants respond to Light.**—The power of chlorophyll is most ancient, and near the base of the Archaean rocks of the Adirondacks may be seen graphites formed from fossilized plant tissues. “The plant organ responds to the directive influence” of the energy of the sun’s rays by a curvature which places it either in a direct line with the rays of light, as in grass seedlings, or at right angles to the light as in ordinary foliage leaves. “Of the light that falls upon a green leaf a part is reflected from its surface and another part is absorbed. That which is reflected and transmitted gives to the leaf its green color; that which is absorbed, consisting of certain red, blue and violet rays, is the source of the energy by means of which the leaf is enabled to carry on its work.”

**Chlorophyll photosensitive.**—Chlorophyll is a “very complex photosensitive system” and its action in the first stage “consists in the separation, either partial or complete, of negative electrons under the influence of sunlight” and the transformation of the energy of light waves into the energy of electrified particles and the initiation “of a whole train of chemical reactions resulting in the building up of the complex organic molecules which are the ultimate products of the plant’s activity.”<sup>19</sup>

**Chlorophyll and the Spectrum.**—According to Prof. Loeb, chlorophyll seems to absorb vigorously the light rays of the Solar Spectrum between B and C, the natures of which are most ener-

gizing, and again between F. Chlorophyllic plant tissue consists principally of Carbon, Hydrogen and Oxygen,<sup>20</sup> while the main object of bacterial life seems to be to seek Nitrogen.<sup>21</sup>

**Coloring of the Red Sea.**—The blue-green algae or Cyanophyceae are found almost everywhere in both fresh and salt water, on damp soil, rocks and bark, and it is a notable and interesting fact that the red of this species is what gives to the Red Sea its characteristic coloring. The antiquity of the algae is shown by the fact that they are responsible for the formation of the ancient limestones, some of which, at the base of the pre-Cambrian, being at least 60,000,000 years old.<sup>22</sup>

**Human embryo in gestation.**—The Human embryo in the process of gestation passes through all the phases of mineral, vegetable and animal life-expression structurally. It is this fact that makes it possible for the heredity-chromatin to perpetuate and transmit organic tendencies observable in the homo as pertaining also to the lower forms of life expression. Even in the higher forms of mammals the heredity-chromatin “recalls primitive stages in the development of the fishes, for example, the gill-arch structure at the side of the throat, which through change of function serves to form the primary cartilaginous jaws (Meckelian cartilages) of mammals as well as the bony ossicles which are connected with the auditory function of the middle ear. Similarly, profound structural ancestral phases in protozoan, fish and reptile structure pervade every part of the mammalian body.”<sup>23</sup>

**All primitive processes a preparation.**—All these primitive processes were but the preparation for the great change that was to take place ere the evolution of consciousness from the trance, dreamless sleep and dream sleep stages could result in full waking consciousness and reason. This great change was the elevation of the horizontal spinal column through which the earth currents flowed in the lower kingdoms, to the upright position through which the spiritual currents could flow, connecting the latent consciousness of the homo with that of the higher and inner spheres of being, so that at last Man might awake, and become indeed “as one of the Gods.”

**Oxyhemoglobin.**—This change also meant the fuller development of the crystals of oxyhemoglobin, the red coloring of mammalian blood, a development which resulted in the gradual indrawing of the Ego into its human vehicles.

**Pituitary Gland.**—The intimate relation between the Chromatin and the Pituitary Gland is to be noted in the human hand, and

in this respect the hand is an indicator of the status of all the functions in the homo which are directly influenced by the condition and status of the Pituitary gland.

**Human Hand; Brachydactyly.**—Short, pudgy fingers, with almost no nails form the congenital brachydactyly hand, and is due *ETHER* to a sudden alteration in the Chromatin or to a congenital defect in the Pituitary Gland, as Drinkwater has shown.

**Normal Brachydactyly.**—The congenital brachydactyly is rather an extreme type and seldom seen. The normal brachydac-

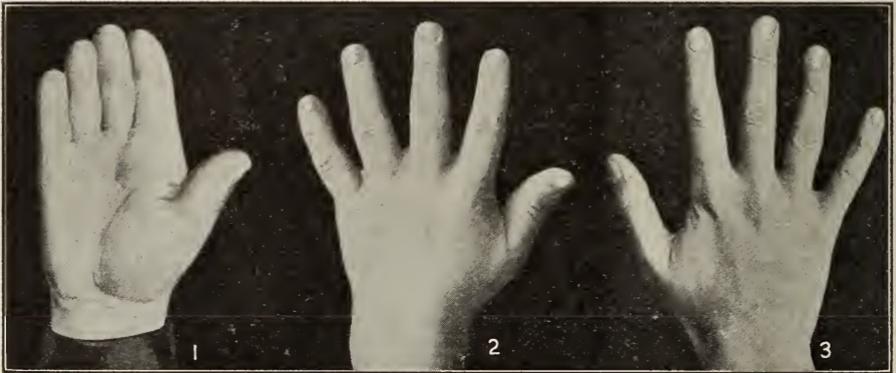


FIG. 52

TYPES OF THE HUMAN HAND.

No. 1. Congenital brachydactyly, due to sudden alteration in the chromatin or congenital defect in the pituitary gland.

—(After Osborn and Drinkwater.)

No. 2. Brachydactyly, due to abnormal secretions of the pituitary gland.

—(After Osborn and Cushing.)

No. 3. Dolichodactyly, indicating insufficient secretions of the pituitary gland.

tyly is the rather broad hand, with “stumpy” fingers and short nails. This type, according to Cushing, is due to supernormal secretions of the Pituitary Gland. The brachydactyly is the hand of the worker and usually of the materialist.

**Dolichodactyly.**—Subnormal secretions of the Pituitary Gland produce the Dolichodactyly or long hand with narrow, slender fingers. This type of hand is usually found among those who are termed “temperamental,” which, strictly speaking, is synonymous with lack of balance and self-control.

**Where the Pituitary Gland originated.**—The Pituitary Gland itself, attached to the brain, originated in our earliest fish and reptilian ancestors, and the activity through its office as a vehicle

of the heredity-chromatin shows the persistence as to differentiation of proportion in the hands, feet and other parts of the human body today, as it showed in the examples cited of the gigantic reptilia.<sup>24</sup>



FIG. 53  
ILLUSTRATING UNCONFORMABLE STRATA, CONTORTED  
SCHIST. ST. LAWRENCE, NEAR BEAUPRE, P. Q.  
(Photo by Allen.)

**Age of mountain uplifts.**—The changes in the Earth's crust were vastly more extreme during the Mesozoic and Palaeozoic times, than during the Tertiary, the era in which the principal evolutionary processes of mammalian life were operative. Yet the Tertiary of the Cenozoic has witnessed many of the most notable mountain uplifts. The Himalayas belong to the Miocene; the Swiss Alps and the Pyrenees to the Oligocene; our Rocky Mountains to the Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene and Pliocene; the Sierra Nevadas to the Jurassic, while older than them all, the Appalachians, with the White Mountains of New Hampshire, commenced their uplift far back in the Carboniferous of the Palaeozoic, completing it in the Permian at the close of the Palaeozoic and the very beginning of the Mesozoic times.<sup>25</sup>

**Corroboration of the North Pole Teaching.**—These latter heights therefore were contemporaneous with Lemurian conditions and existed throughout the Atlantean times, as did also some land formations still extant at the North Pole. The Rosicrucian teachings of the beginnings of organic life forms at the North Pole is further corroborated by the "North Polar Theory" of Wallace, sup-

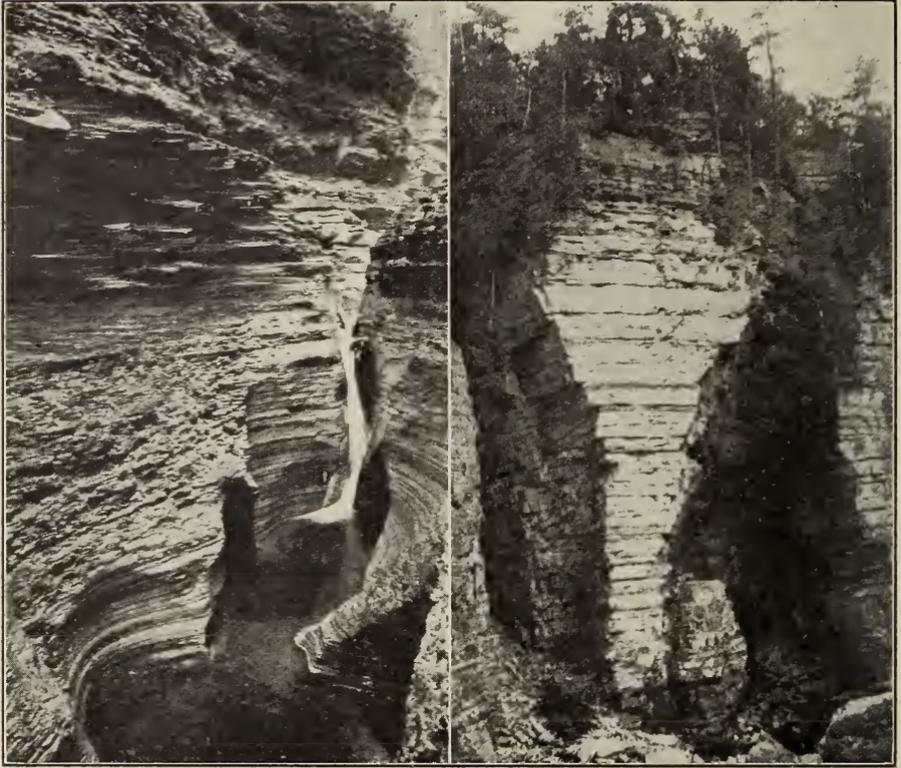


FIG. 54  
CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST.

Results of erosion activities. Left, Watkin's Glen, New York, where the erosion has been through Devonian rocks of the Palaeozoic. The Glen is from 100 to 300 feet deep and is a winding gorge about  $\frac{1}{2}$  miles long. The rocks are of the Portage and Hamilton groups and the operations of Nature here shown represent between 30,000 and 50,000 years. The "pot-hole" formations are cause by the whirling of stones by the early rapids in local whirlpools causing perfectly rounded indentations sometimes many feet deep. Right, Ausable Chasm, New York, showing "Elephant's Head," a gigantic illustration of erosive activities.

—(Photos, Left by A. B. Allen; Right, by G. F. Plummer)

ported latterly by Matthew, that there was originally a northern land connection between the Eastern and Western Hemispheres during Tertiary time (at least) and that this land connection was explanatory of the principal features of *mammalian migration and geographical evolution*.<sup>26</sup>

**Conscience.**—Through all these long ages of evolutionary process, in the unfoldment, development and expansion of consciousness, a subtle power is also germinated and developed, which finds expression only in the Human Kingdom, the subtle power known

as CONSCIENCE. This is a powerful principle possessed by every human being from the lowest to the highest in some form or modification, colored by the contemporaneous ethics and concepts, morally, of races, locale and environment. It has already been stated that the purpose of human existence was to assimilate experience. Heindel has termed it the "feeling of past pain," a very correct definition. We may amplify this definition by giving it as the manifestation of the COSMIC MEMORY OF ALL PAST EXPERIENCE.

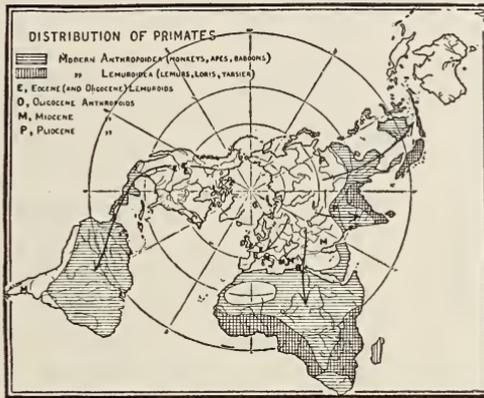


FIG. 55  
 MAP SHOWING THE DISTRIBUTION OF MAMMALS ACCORDING  
 TO THE NORTH POLAR EXPLANATION OF THEIR GEO-  
 GRAPHIC MIGRATIONS. THIS REFERS ESPECI-  
 ALLY TO THE PRIMATES.

(After W. D. Matthew, 1915.)

**Present Humanity never Dinosaurs.**—While we have shown many examples of the forms of life expression existent upon the Earth during previous ages contemporaneous with man-in-the-making, it must not be assumed that present humanity were once dinosaurs. These life forms belonged to another life-wave, which will in due time become ensouled in human forms, but present humanity belongs to a still earlier life-wave.

**Remote origin of Conscience.**—Nevertheless, the development of Conscience began even in the present life-wave long ages prior to Man's awakening AS Man to the objectivity of the material or physical world. So also, in the activities of the earliest life forms known to science today we may witness tendencies operative under the direction of the Group Spirits which are the prototypic origins of what will some day manifest as conscience when the existent life-wave is humanly ensouled.

**How Conscience acts.**—The “conscience fund” of the Government is an evidence of the power of this vital principle, for in obedience to its dictates wrong doers are prompted, sometimes many years after, to make restitution for their transgressions. No man can escape his conscience. It acts always constructively. It approves a contemplated good work. It disapproves a wrong one. When one contemplates a worthy action, there arises a sense of justification that resulted from previous right actions in past incarnations and even more remote phases of evolution. When one contemplates or is about to commit a wrong deed there arises within the cosmic memory the sense of pain, which accompanied or resulted from error in the past.

**Conscience and the panoramas.**—This principle of conscience is made more and more permanent and effective in its operations by the panoramas already mentioned, one just after the death of the physical body and the other just prior to commencing the building of a new one for the next mortal expression. Another form of panorama is also noted in the flash of life incidents sometimes experienced by those who are drowning, falling from great heights or about to be executed. This form is similar but of shorter duration to the panorama experienced just after death, and is due to the separation of the Etheric Body from the Physical.

**Dimensions; Fourth, etc.**—The transitional states of consciousness are really progressions from one dimension to another. We often speak of one, two, three and nowadays of the “Fourth Dimension.” These “dimensions” are really amplifications of preceding states of consciousness. Consciousness in the mineral stage of evolution is locked, trance-like. In the Vegetable Kingdom the evolving spirit moves in one dimension only—extent. In the Animal Kingdom, its consciousness functions in two dimensions. In the Human Kingdom Man’s consciousness cognizes three dimensions, length, breadth and thickness.

**Interpenetration.**—The development of Man’s consciousness to that of the comprehension of the spiritual planes amplifies to four dimensions, length, breadth, thickness and—INTERPENETRATION. In other words, to the spiritual consciousness, the solids of the physical world interpose no barriers, and such consciousness is extensive not only in linear directions but in interior or internal and subliminal directions as well. The expression of this state in diagrammatic form has often been attempted by the construction of tesseracts or geometrical figures expressing not only linear fig-

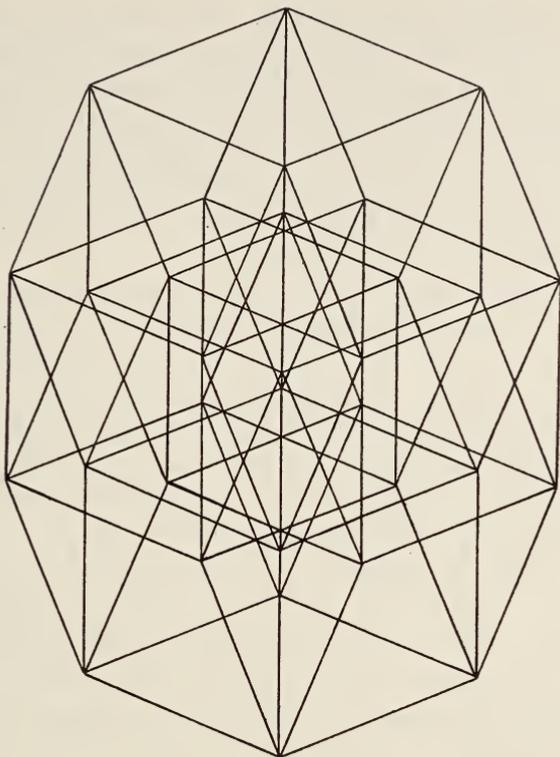


FIG. 56  
THE PENTACT. (FR. HYDE 9°.)

For the general theory and illustration of the Fourth Dimension, the student is referred to the excellent work by MR. CLAUDE BRAGDON, entitled, "A PRIMER OF HIGHER SPACE." The Figure shown herewith is a summary of many rules and many figures. FR. HYDE, 9° gives in this resume the original series of bodies of the square, cube, tesseract type. It will be noticed that in a square (or triangle)

- 2 lines meet at every point.
- in a cube (or tetrahedron)
  - 3 lines meet at every point.
  - 2 squares (or surfaces) meet at every line.
- in a tesseract.
  - 4 lines meet at every point.
  - 3 squares meet at every line.
  - 2 cubes meet at every square.
- in a pentact (or 5-dimensional body of this nature)
  - 5 lines meet at every point.
  - 4 squares meet at every line.
  - 3 cubes meet at every square.
  - 2 tesseracts meet at every cube.

This can be verified from the projection of the pentact which is given in the Figure, and the curious reader will be able to pick out in this Figure, 32 points, 80 lines, 80 squares, 40 cubes and 10 tesseracts.

ures but of solids, cubes, etc. The bibliography of the Fourth Dimension Hypothesis developed along purely mathematical lines is voluminous and need not be discussed at further length herein. For those students who are interested in the mathematical exposition of this interesting and fascinating problem we publish the

diagram prepared by Frater Hyde, 9°. From the esoteric standpoint dimensions above three indicate that all dimensions are really states of consciousness both as applied to mundane and supermundane conditions. And as there are many inner or interior world regions and planes, so there is a definite state of consciousness or "dimension" pertaining to each, consequently not only a "Fourth Dimension" but a fifth, sixth, seventh and still inner or "higher" dimensions as well.<sup>27\*</sup>

**Karma.**—The evolution of consciousness from its primitive states, and its secondary attribute, Conscience, brought about the establishment of another condition or state, known as Karma. This principle, Karma, we term the primary attribute, as it is really the first resultant upon the attainment of full waking consciousness. Waking consciousness may be termed the cause, Karma the effect. Conscience, as the secondary attribute is the means by which the homo may modify the effect.

**Law of Cause and Effect.**—Karma, which is now known as a distinct Law of Life by all schools of genuine occultism, is often defined as the "Law of Cause and Effect" and in its operation is explained by the saying, "as ye sow, so shall ye reap."<sup>28</sup>

**Personal Responsibility.**—Karma is the personal responsibility for acts committed—

- a Consciously.
- b Unconsciously.

**How Operative.**—Every act we perform, or thought we conceive, or word we utter, has a direct and an indirect result. If the thought, word or deed is good, the result will be principally for good, allowing for a certain amount of error in judgment due to human fallibility.

If the thought, word or deed be wrong, the result will be wrong, with a still smaller latitude for human error in judgment.

**Good and Bad Karma.**—Results are what constitute the Karma of the person from whom the causes of the results originated. Good results mean good Karma. Wrong results mean wrong or so-called evil Karma. Each Life Expression is a page in our individual ledger showing the balance of good and bad Karma.

---

\*For a clear, concise and interesting exegesis of Fourth Dimensional concepts, the student is referred to "A Primer of Higher Space," by Claude Bragdon. Also to other works by this same excellent writer.

The amount of good Karma we accumulate helps to determine our status of advancement in the next succeeding incarnation. The bad Karma accumulated must be brought over with us, as a "balance forward" to our next ledger page, to be "worked out" if possible during that incarnation.

By endeavoring to live a life of good thoughts, good deeds and good words, we develop good Karma, and by our inattention to this law, and on the theory that we "live one life at a time" indulge in all the appetites of the flesh, we accumulate a store of bad Karma that may require many incarnations to work out in pain and suffering.

**Law of Consequence or Compensation.**—This working out of the Law of Karma is, in its operation, the Law of Consequence or Compensation, for as we are also told in Scripture that we must pay the "uttermost farthing,"<sup>29</sup> so in very truth we must pay every Karmic debt, and from this accounting there is no escape, nor can riches or coldly scientific benefactions reduce the account one jot or tittle.

**Parable of the Talents.**—The Law of Karma and its accompaniment, the Law of Compensation, is the real basis of explanation for all the seeming inequalities of human life, why the rich man is unable to be happy, why the poor man oftentimes has a happiness envied by the rich, why the youth born to affluence turns out an apparent degenerate, why the poor boy rises from obscurity to eminence in the seats of the mighty, even to the rulership of a nation. It is the exemplification of the Parable of the Talents, that to whoso hath been faithful over a few things will be given rulership over many things.<sup>30</sup>

**How it explains exceptional cases.**—In the cases of those who may be confirmed invalids without any apparent reason for such a condition, and apparently not amenable to medical treatment, impossible of correct diagnosis, we would find on looking into their status psychically that the cause lay in their neglect of important physical functions during a previous incarnation, as a result of which they built the vehicles for the present incarnation imperfectly and must suffer the penalty for such neglect.

In the case of a truly good man, generous, yet who seems never able to get ahead and succeed in life, we shall find the same solution in his Karma.

**Where Karma begins.**—Up to a certain point in human evolution, Man is unaware that he is under any such laws, but after

attaining a certain definite intellectual status, where, under his existing mental code and ethical system, he is expected to and does know that he should obey the laws relative to right and wrong doing, he learns from objective conditions that for every offence there must be punishment; that if he escapes it at the hands of his fellowmen, he cannot escape it at the hands of his conscience, and as he progresses in intellectual and spiritual unfoldment, he also learns that his responsibility is not confined to his own acts as they relate to himself, but also as they relate to society, and finally as they will relate to generations who shall come after him. Thus he becomes amenable to the Law of Karma on the physico-intellectual plane, and as he gradually develops his spiritual insight and learns of the Law of Karma and Compensation as actual conditions, he sets to work to eliminate his past Karma by full, free and frank recognition of former error, a sincere desire to make full restitution if possible, and finally to develop a greater balance of good Karma by engaging in a life of Good Thoughts, Good Deeds and Good Words.

**Restitution necessary.**—It is most important that this Law of Karma and the Law of Compensation (that we must make restitution in some adequate way for every offence) be fully understood and pondered, for not only does it concern those conscious acts, either right or wrong, that we commit daily, but also does it concern those acts committed UNconsciously. Words or deeds spoken or performed even in jest, may oftentimes be the causes of unhappiness to others whom we may not know of.

**Shown in After-Death Panorama.**—Yet as we were the causes of their unhappiness, WE are responsible therefor, and by the Law of Compensation must make restitution when the knowledge of such unhappiness comes to us, even if through the after death panorama, for then we shall see our lives clearly, not alone all that we may know of them consciously, but the multitudinous incidents that we were not mortally cognizant of. While it may not be possible for us to make restitution personally to the ones who suffered at our hands unconsciously to us, we must nevertheless by becoming conscious of the incident nullify its astral activity by redoubled efforts in the next incarnation toward right thought, right action and right feeling.

**Guardian of the Threshold.**—It is this very Law of Karma that brings us face to face, as it were, with the GUARDIAN OF THE THRESHOLD, that principle so frequently mentioned by oc-

cultists and mystics, yet regarding which so many conflicting theories and explanations have been offered.

The Guardian of the Threshold is not necessarily met with by those who simply develop spiritual clairvoyance, unless they choose to do so, and if they are at all instructed it is a condition which few care to undertake to meet willingly.

**When met.**—Generally speaking, there are two distinct occasions when the Guardian of the Threshold is encountered:

1st. After death, if the individual is sufficiently advanced to understand spiritual conditions. Otherwise it comes to such as a demoniacal influence in accord with the evil powers commonly taught by popular theology.

2nd. As a test in REAL initiation, not the initiation of degrees in a mortal school, but the inner, spiritual initiation into the actual mysteries.

**What the Guardian really is.**—The Terror or Guardian of the Threshold IS THE EPITOME OR KARMIC ACCUMULATION OF THE CONCRETED THOUGHT FORMS OF OUR INDIVIDUAL BAD KARMA, and takes the form principally developed by the major aspect of our hidden thoughts. If the thoughts have been sensual, the Guardian will be a sensual monstrosity, and similarly, according to whether our thoughts have been vicious, brutal, malicious, revengeful, envious, covetous or idolatrous.

**Fear.**—The terror comes from our FEAR at meeting face to face—OURSELVES—as we really have been predominantly, unknown to our fellowmen.

Our ability to pass the Guardian depends upon the amount and strength of our good Karma, and the consequent courage we possess in meeting the evil force, conquering it, and passing beyond. The good is ultimately always the conquering power or force, but if our good Karma be weak, then our meeting with the Guardian will not be pleasant nor easily accomplished, and many an unsuccessful incarnation is due to the inability of the individual to pass the Guardian in his previous death to rebirth interim, and the result is that he has been susceptible to its maladventent influence thereafter, until, inspired by the vary forces of repulsion for evil, he casts aside the selfish desires of the flesh and earnestly seeks the good, and thenceforward climbs slowly but steadily up the constructive pathway that leads to light and life, with freedom from this horrible form of obsession, for no obsession by unseen entities can equal the obsession of one's own self by one's own evil Karmic Guardian.

**Importance of being able to meet the Guardian successfully.**

—No amount of study or theorizing will enable the student of the mysteries to successfully encounter the Guardian. Only the Life of Right Thought, Right Action and Right Feeling will put him in a condition and position to do so. This passing is the hell that we must all experience, but to whoso is duly prepared will come the bright and powerful assistance of the spiritual forces that guide and govern man in his long journey through the ages of evolutionary process and the gradual unfoldment of his consciousness to higher and higher states and planes of comprehension and understanding.

QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 10

1. What do occult writers often fail to correlate?
2. What accompanied Atlantis on its appearance as a Continent?
3. What are the causes of earthquakes?
4. What does Prof. Dana say about them?
5. Are the Nature-forces left to "work out their own way"?
6. How does the necessity for changes in earth's crust become apparent?
7. What are the means employed for effecting such changes?
8. What additional proof is given of movement from the North Pole?
9. What do the New Hampshire boulders indicate?
10. What is Man of today said to be?
11. Where does Mankind derive its fear of serpents?
12. Of what was Atlantis the home?
13. What was the principal habitat of the dinosaurs?
14. Name some of the species.
15. To what is the ancient Canadian climate likened?
16. What do the ancient types of reptilia furnish?
17. What is understood by the so-called great ages of the Patriarchs?
18. How did they really live to advanced ages?
19. What was the status of the Ego in Atlantean times?
20. What was the principal attainment of Man in Atlantean times?
21. How did Man first "know his wife"?
22. What notable attribute did the Lemurians lack?
23. Give an idea of the extent and orders of the reptilian era.
24. How many survive?

25. What has become of the early life forms?
26. What does the progress of the mammalia indicate?
27. How did the birds originate?
28. What is their relative antiquity?
29. What was the Tetrapteryx?
30. What does the study of Origins really constitute?
31. What is the origin of Intelligence?
32. What is Chromatin and what is its relation to Protoplasm?
33. For what was the Earth made?
34. What is the seat of Heredity?
35. How is Chromatin distributed?
36. What is its notable characteristic?
37. Of what is Chromatin the visible center?
38. What is the development of the individual said to be?
39. What is the size of a hydrogen atom?
40. What is Chromatin further said to be?
41. State the fundamental biologic law.
42. How is the inter-relation between the visible and the invisible shown?
43. What are the algae said to be?
44. What is the nature and value of chlorophyll?
45. How do plants respond to light?
46. How is chlorophyll said to be photosensitive?
47. How does it relate to the spectrum?
48. How does it affect the "Red Sea"?
49. Through what does the human embryo pass in the process of gestation?
50. What are all the primitive processes said to be?
51. What is oxyhaemoglobin?
52. What intimate relation does the Pituitary Body sustain?
53. Describe differences in the human hand.
54. Where did the Pituitary Body originate?
55. What was the age of Mountain uplifts?
56. How is the North Pole teaching corroborated?
57. What is conscience?
58. Have any of present Humanity ever been dinosaurs?
59. What is the comparative antiquity of conscience?
60. How does conscience act?
61. How does it relate to the panoramas?
62. What are transitional states of consciousness said to be?
63. Are there more dimensions than an additional fourth?
64. What is Karma?

65. How is it operative?
66. What is meant by good and bad Karma?
67. What is the Law of Consequence or Compensation?
68. How does it explain the Parable of the Talents?
69. How does it explain "exceptional cases"?
70. Where does Karma begin?
71. What is necessary?
72. What is shown in the after death panorama?
73. What is the Guardian of the Threshold?
74. When is it met with?
75. Of what is the Guardian the epitome?
76. What is said of Fear?
77. What is the importance of being able to meet the Guardian successfully?
78. Have you attempted to visualize to yourself what YOUR personal Guardian may be?
79. Are YOU, by practicing daily introspection, attempting to prepare to meet it?
80. Have YOU estimated the Karma that may be influencing your daily activities?
81. If not, *WHY NOT*?



INSTRUCTION XI.  
FORMATIVE PROCESSES IN MAN.

THE CELL, ITS DEVELOPMENT AND AMPLIFICATION; TRANSITIONS.  
VESTIGIAL REMAINS, BASIC STRUCTURE OF PROTOPLASM,  
ORGANISMS.

---

**Humanity is Divinity thinking Itself into Manifestation.**—It has been said that “Humanity is Divinity thinking itself into manifestation.” It might be corrected to read, “thinking itself into concrete expression.” This is a true concept, and in its light we may regard all the creative and formative processes noted in the foregoing Instructions as stages in the progressional development of the Divine Mind itself, for even Divinity must be in a state of progression, otherwise there would be an ultimate terminus to all progress.

**Evolution interim between the Mineral and Human Stages.**—Referring to the Kingdom of Life in general, Involution may be said to have terminated at the Mineral stage. Referring to the Homo, it may be said to have terminated with the indrawing of the Ego into full possession and occupancy of its vehicles. Between the arrival at the Mineral stage of the Life Kingdom and the status of the true Homo multitudinous transitional and transmutative processes have been accomplished.

**How the Mineral Spirit adjusts itself.**—We find on referring to Instruction No. 4 that “the Mineral spirit being so confined by the process of crystallization adjusts itself to the geometric and purely mathematic form of crystals, remaining inert until acted upon by exterior forces.”

**Assimilation by Vegetable, Animal and Human Spirits.**—Next, we find that the Vegetable Spirits assimilate the crystallized elements, transmuting them into crystalloids which are in turn assimilated by the Spirits of the Animal and Human Kingdoms, transmuted into cells and compounded into organs. Above all we must remember that—

LIVING MATTER DISPLAYS THE ENERGY OF COLLOIDAL AND THE PLAN OF CRYSTALLOIDAL MATTER.

**Progressional development of the primal cell.**—With this in mind then, we must regard the evolution of living matter from the mineral stage to the human as the progressional development of the primal cell into and through complex forms. For the motif of such progressional development we may refer to the Instruction wherein we found that a creating God vivifies each individual and inseparable atom of Cosmic Root Substance in the spatial locale for a solar system WITH HIS OWN LIFE OR UNIVERSAL PRINCIPLE. (Instruction No. 1.)

**Cell Intelligence.**—If this is the case with the primal atoms, then it is easy to understand that their resultant combinations in mass must also be vivified with that Divine Life which includes the Divine Intelligence in modicum, and that therefore, every cell of the earliest form of vegetable substance has its own allotment of the Divine Intelligence, and the aggregate intelligence of a given mass is the aggregate intelligence of the cells composing that mass. We may even use the term “consciousness,” remembering that either term used must be held in mind as applying only in evolutionary process.

**The Cell and the Egg.**—The gradual manifestation and concretion of the vehicles of the Ego was, as has been so often stated, a process of crystallization from within outward. This is also true of the cell, and the composition of the cell therefore, and the Egg, which is a good illustration on a large scale, should be studied with their analogies and correspondences to the human vehicles.

**Physical Correspondences.**—Physically speaking,—

Mass corresponds to the Physical Vehicle.

Molecules correspond to the Etheric Vehicle.

Atomic Structure corresponds to the Astral Vehicle.

Electrons correspond to the Mental Vehicles.

Ions—pure Electricity, Light, or God, to the EGO, or Essence.

**Cell Correspondences.**—In regard to the cell (in humans from 1/125 to 1/5000 of an inch in diameter), the

Cell Wall corresponds to the Physical Body.

Inner Lining (Membrana Pellucida) corresponds to the Etheric Body.

Protoplasm (Cytoplasm) corresponds to the Astral Body.

Nucleus corresponds to the Mental Sheath.

Nucleolus corresponds to the EGO.

**Egg Correspondences.**—Similarly with the Egg, the Shell corresponds to the Physical Body.  
 Shell Lining corresponds to the Etheric Body.  
 White of the Egg corresponds to the Astral Body.  
 Yolk of the Egg corresponds to the Mental Sheath.  
 Germ-Speck or Kernel corresponds to the Ego.

The activities of the centrosomes in cells compares with the activity of the Threefold Spirit.

Simple as they may appear to those uninformed in biological and zoological science, nevertheless the births and deaths and the

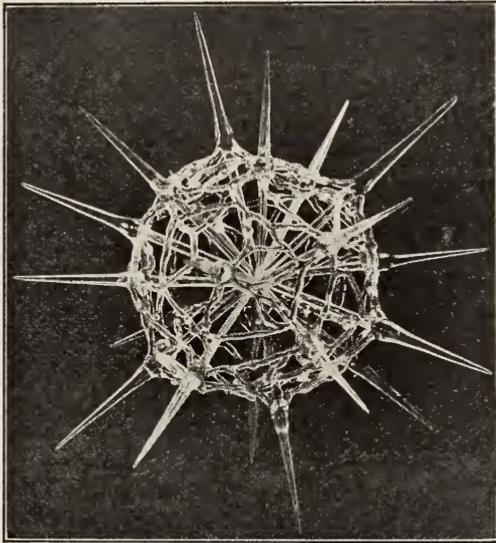


FIG. 57  
 MODEL SKELETON OF RADIOLARIAN. STAURASPIS  
 STAURACANTHA.  
 —(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

countless progressional combinations and developments of the simple protoplasmic cells accomplish the miracles of evolutionary life.

**Twenty-six stages in Descent of Humanity.**—Haeckel has traced the descent of the human race in twenty-six stages<sup>1</sup> from organisms like the Monera (simple, structureless masses of protoplasm with hardly recognizable nuclei), the Amoebae (“simple protoplasmic bodies with distinct nuclei and nucleolei, effecting movement by extending parts of the body into finger-like pseudopodia”),<sup>2</sup> the Mollusca, Crustacea, Radiata and all the other earlier forms of protozoic life, up to the present.

The charts given in "Rosicrucian Symbology" (by the author of this book) show comparative developments of foetal Chick, Tortoise, Dog and Man, and the progressional development of the foetal human brain in strict analogy to the evolutionary development of



FIG. 58

LANUGO, THE TEMPORARY HAIRY COVERING ON THE FACE OF A FIVE MONTH'S EMBRYO, ACCORDING TO ECKER.

—(Weidersheim's "Structure of Man." Macmillan.)

animal life.<sup>3</sup> The extent to which this is true is shown by Prof. Walter, who says: "Even Man during embryonic growth passes through a fur-bearing stage, when soft, delicate fetal fur, "lanugo," covers all of the body except the red part of the lips, the external



FIG. 59

LANUGO: AN ATAVISTIC DEVELOPMENT OF HAIR ON ADRIAN JEFFICHJEV, KNOWN AS THE "RUSSIAN DOG-FACED MAN"

(After Weidersheim.)

genitalia, the digital tips already covered by the nails, the palms of the hands and the soles of the feet. Before birth, however, the temporary lanugo practically vanishes, to be replaced by another covering of hair which is much less general in its distribution and which becomes locally accentuated at puberty."<sup>4</sup>

**Every Homo recapitulates earlier Forms of Being.**—The student will see from these charts that every human being in the course of its foetal life and gestation recapitulates all the earlier stages of its evolution, being in due course invertebrate, vertebrate, fish, bird, reptile and mammal, and is it not clear that such being the case, we preserve throughout each and every incarnation in our cosmic memory the knowledge of our earlier forms of existence? This fact is what makes it possible for us, if we make it a special study, to reconstruct with exactitude the extinct forms of bygone ages, and the unconscious development of this cosmic memory enables archaeologists and palaeontologists to accomplish their seeming wonders.

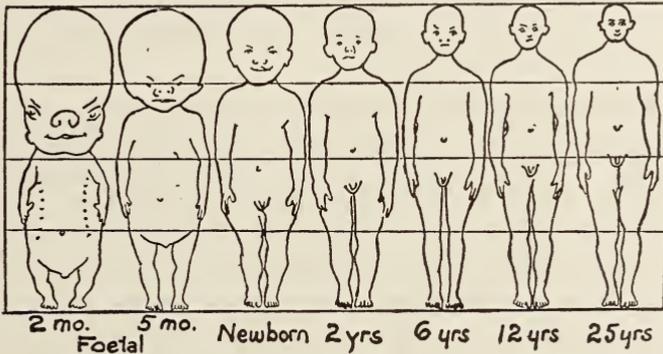


FIG. 60.  
 FROM EMBRYO TO MATURITY. CHANGES IN THE PROPORTIONS OF THE HUMAN FIGURE DURING PRENATAL AND POSTNATAL GROWTH.  
 —(After Stratz, in Morris' "Anatomy.")

**Origin of Selective Power.**—Man, born of an egg exactly as are all the other higher forms of life, is the epitome of cell development and extension. The Divine Intelligence implanted in the Cosmic Root Atom is inherited by the cell and multiplied and amplified therein by affinity and association. It reaches still greater expansion in the organ of which that given cell forms a part, and gives to the organ the selective power to assimilate its own immediate and exact requirements from nourishment provided for the entire vehicle of which that organ is but a single part.

**Cell Consciousness inferior to Life Spirit Consciousness.**—This cell consciousness is the inner cause and reason for the marvellous selective powers exhibited in so many departments of Nature. In each Life Kingdom the individual cell consciousness

is under the direct control of the phase of the Consciousness pertaining to the Life Spirit wave of that Kingdom. Thus in the Vegetable Kingdom, the individual cell consciousness or intelligence is absorbed in the Dreamless Sleep Consciousness of that Kingdom; in the Animal Kingdom by the Dream Sleep Consciousness of that Kingdom, and in the Human it finally rises to greater activity and power in obedience to the dominant control of the Ego.

**Present Human Form not final.**—There can be no fixed visualization in the mind of the Absolute as to the ultimate form of evolving Humanity. As the Absolute through the Supreme Being and the Creative Gods is slowly thinking Itself into manifestation or concrete expression, gradually producing a better Humanity, so Humanity, as made up of the Egos who have learned to build their vehicles apart from the guidance of Celestial Lords, is slowly building better bodies.

**Cast Off Human Models.**—As Man of today is vastly different in appearance as well as attainment from the earliest known types, so Man of an equal time hence will differ as radically. The shores of time in the long interim between the Mineral Kingdom and present Humanity are strewn with the debris of cast off and defunct human models, just as the inventor having proved that his idea is practicable builds and discards model after model in perfecting and improving the expression of that idea. And sometimes the last model is such a great advance over the first that it requires some stretch of the imagination to conceive that the one was the parent or ancestor of the other.

**Ontogeny, Phylogeny, Epigenesis defined.**—These evidences of Man's age-long career are revealed to us through the science of Ontogeny or the history of the development of the individual usually called Embryology. With this must be coupled the science of Phylogeny or the history of the palaeontological development of organisms. The ability of the Homo in his advance to cast off obsolete forms and build under his prerogative of free-will better and more improved forms, is called Epigenesis.

**Degenerate Forms.**—The study of these sciences reveals many misconceptions. We have already explained that Man is not descended from the monkey, but that the monkey is the degeneration of Man; more properly speaking, the degeneration of the obsolete FORMS of early Man. This is also seen in the other Life Kingdoms. Coal, some fossils and petrifications are the degeneration of the Vegetable Kingdom, as witnessed by the "Petrified

Forest" of Arizona. Arctic moss and rock fungi are also degenerations of the same Kingdom. Polyyps are degenerations of the mammalia, and various minerals show the presence of early vegetal forms.

**Vestigial or Rudimentary Organs; Skull Theory.**—Chief among the evidences of human debris revealed by ontogenical study are what are commonly known as "vestigial organs" or "rudimentary organs." Those pertaining to the head and skull show the transitional period from the Animal to the Human Kingdom since the acceptance of the vertebral theory of the skull set forth by Goethe. This fact is that the skulls of humans and all other vertebrate animals are but the transformation and amplification of the topmost portion of the vertebral columns.<sup>5</sup> Through the understanding of this important truth the transition from the horizontal to the upright spinal column takes on greater importance.

**Ascent of the Spiritual Currents.**—This greater importance means that although the animals have skulls and cerebral systems, the Ego could not indraw until, by the upright position, the development of the last vertebra should assume a form which would give to all portions of the brain the power to function the full waking consciousness necessary to the human Ego. This was accomplished by the ASCENT of the spiritual currents UP the spinal column, away from the earth plane instead of parallel to it.

**Examples of the Rudimentary Organs, In Animals and Whales.**—We will now note some of the so-called rudimentary organs. Among the animals we find in the mid-bone of the upper jaw, fore-teeth or incisors, which never fully develop and therefore serve no useful purpose. Whale embryos are noted, possessing teeth, which are afterward lost and whalebone substituted.<sup>6</sup>

**Ear Lobes, Human.**—In Man, the ear lobes are no longer under his control as they still are with the animals. Although the muscles exist, he is for the most part unable to exercise them. They can be developed by exercise and will power, but they are "imperfect organs on the road to complete disappearance."<sup>7</sup>

**Third Eye-lid, Human.**—There is also the third eye-lid, the tiny crescent shaped fold in the inner corner of the eye near the root of the nose. It is known as the "plica semilunaris." As far back as the silurian times the primitive fishes possessed this, and it is seen in active use among cats, dogs and other mammals, as well as among the birds and reptiles. There are also the eyes that do not see, found among those fishes that make caves and sub-

terraneous streams their habitat.<sup>8</sup> Also in many invertebrate animals.

**Among Reptiles.**—Among the reptiles we find the defunct hind legs, still observable in the hinder portion of the giant serpents, boas, etc.<sup>9</sup>

**Among Plants.**—Among the plants we often find the rudimentary organs in the blossoms, for instance, in the Labiatae we frequently find only two of the stamens or male organs developed, the other aborted.<sup>10</sup>

**Mid-jaw Bone, Man.**—Goethe's discovery of the mid-jaw bone in Man, which can be seen in human embryos, was another startling evidence of Man's transitional progress.<sup>11</sup>

**Tails, Human; Origin of the Mammary Glands.**—Rudimentary human tails are seen in the three, four or five tail vertebrae (vertebrae coccygeae) as aborted organs. In Man the mammary glands of the breasts are rudimentary. The mammary glands are of especial interest, as they are the evidences of the chief cause of the origin of mammals out of reptile-like forms. The process was as follows: Due to change of labor of the skin glands on the reptilian belly side instead of continuing as perspiration and fatty glands they gradually transformed into milk secreting glands. The cause that led to this change was the habit of the new born of the species licking the ventral skin of the mother. The irritating stimulus thus caused led quantitatively to the enlargement of the important mammary glands and the various problems of the female bosom may be thus phylogenetically traced back to this primal basis.<sup>12</sup>

**Gill-clefts, Cable-Tow.**—The gill-clefts of amphibians, some of the reptilia, and those seen in human embryos come under the head of rudimentary organs but are of great antiquity, as they are a persistence from the Moon Period of evolution. These gill-clefts constituted the apparatus through which the pioneers of the life-wave of Virgin Spirits breathed the hot, vaporous fire-mist of the Moon Period. These beings were then animal-like, but not in the semblance of any known animals of today, and instead of inhabiting the earth's surface, they existed in suspension just above it by cords analogous to the umbilici. This fact is symbolized by the modern "Cable-Tow" of exoteric initiations.<sup>13</sup>

**Prostate and Clitoris.**—The prostate of man is the rudiment of the female uterus, while in woman the clitoris is the rudimentary masculine organ.<sup>14</sup> The evidences of rudimentary beards

and mustaches on many women are common to all observers.<sup>15</sup> By some the vermiform appendix is considered a rudimentary organ.

**Urschleim or "Original Slime"; Infusoria and Cell Theory.**—The preceding paragraph brings up another phase of Man's evolutionary progress and process, that of sex. Oken's theory that all phenomena of organic life proceeded from a common chemical substance or simple vital substance which he designated "Urschleim" or "original slime," gave to science the first real clue to the phenomena of generation. Now we use the term "Proto-

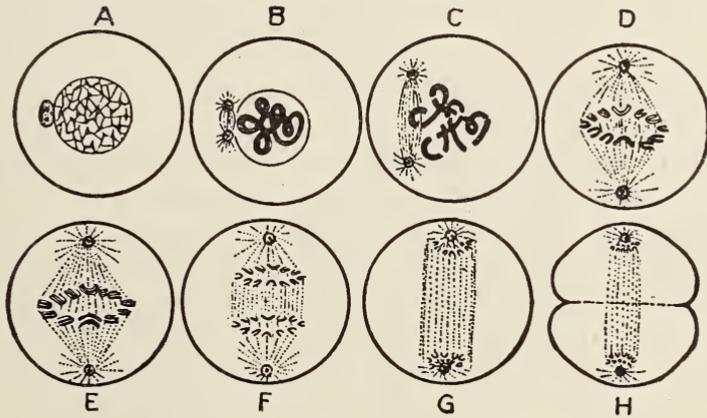


FIG. 61

Cell division. Diagrams showing the actual processes involved, in what is called mitosis or nuclear division. A, nucleus, normal, centrosome by its side. B, spindre appears, which in C becomes separated into chromosomes; D, centrosomes at opposite poles, chromosomes form an equatorial plate; E, each chromosome divides longitudinally and in F and G the halves become drawn to the opposite poles; H, the cell divided into two. —(After Wilder, in Lull's "Organic Evolution," Macmillan.)

plasm" in lieu of "original slime," in the sense of cell-substance. In 1809 Oken asserted that "the primitive slime produced in the sea by spontaneous generation," at once assumed the form of microscopically small bladders, which he termed "Mile" or "Infusoria." Organic nature has for its basis an infinity of such vehicles.<sup>16</sup> Substituting for bladder or infusorium the word cell, and we come at once to the cell theory, one of the greatest discoveries of the century.

**Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz; Each Cell a Creative Thought.**

—That great trio of scientists, Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz, while differing on many points regarding the evolution of organic species, agreed on one point which effectually undermined the assertion of the Church regarding the individual creation of Man as a

distinct type. Agassiz summed up this agreement in the words that he (Man) is the "embodied creative thought of God."<sup>17</sup> And Oken asserted that "Man has been developed, not created."<sup>18</sup> These two statements agree in the Rosicrucian philosophy perfectly. We have stated previously in this Instruction that each cell embodies a modicum of the Divine Intelligence, EACH CELL IS A CREATIVE THOUGHT OF GOD in manifestation, and what scientist can tell whether that cell will develop into a predicted form or not? From the creative thought develops the higher and more complex organism.

**Sexual Differentiation.**—Passing from the reproduction of simple cells by fission to the higher forms of reproduction and propagation in the Human Kingdom, Rosicrucian science states three distinct states of sexual differentiation:

- 1 Hermaphroditismus, both sexes in same individual.
- 2 Gonochorismus, union of two different individuals.
- 3 Parthenogenesis, virginal reproduction.

**Hermaphroditism in the Kingdoms; Transition to Sexual Separation.**—The first form is still common in the Vegetable Kingdom, less so in the Animal Kingdom and rare in the Human, although instances have been authentically noted therein. The garden snail produces in one part of its sexual glands eggs and in another part sperm. In some human hermaphrodites self fructification has been possible; in others copulation and reciprocal fructification of two hermaphrodites has been necessary for causing the development of the eggs. THIS LATTER PHASE IS THE TRANSITION TO SEXUAL SEPARATION, now complete in the Human Kingdom.

**The Luciferians; Fall of Man; Temptation of Adam and Eve.**—Man was hermaphroditic while human propagation was carried on under the guidance of the Hierarchies; the sexes became separate when the Luciferian Spirits, stragglers from the Moon Period who did not become Angels but were far in advance of present Humanity, "opened Man's eyes to the knowledge of good and evil." The Angels who advanced, work downwards on Man through the power of Creative Love. The Luciferians who, not being Angels, yet unable to use a Physical Body, required a physical brain for exterior contact, work upwards through the Creative Sex force. Thus they influenced Man to utilize his sex powers for creative purposes independently of the higher guidance. From this has arisen the tradition of the temptation of Adam and Eve and the

assurance of the Tempter that they should become as Gods, knowing both good and evil.

But the Luciferians were also "Light Bringers" to Man, for without this knowledge Man would have lived a painless but aimless existence, lacking progress.

**Salvation and Redemption.**—In the exercise of his free-will, in the use of his sense and sex powers for propagation, Man has also given way to sense and sex dissipation and sensuality, and his SALVATION will consist in his REDEMPTION of his Creative Powers from their present low estate and their transmutation to the higher forms of mental creative activity. MAN WILL AGAIN BECOME HERMAPHRODITIC, and the process is even now under way.

**Transformation of Sex.**—In the great American Museum of Natural History, in New York City, may be seen an exhibit that demonstrates this truth to the thoughtful student. Therein are specimens of common fowl in which experiments in the transformation of sex have been carried on, and which scientists the world over are carefully watching. In this exhibit, the ovaries of a common hen have been transferred to the cock, which transference has caused the latter to develop the plumage of the female and lose his comb. Similarly, the removal of the ovaries of the female has caused the bird to put on the plumage and spurs of the male.

**Importance of the experiment.**—Now the significant truth in this experiment is that such a process begun and maintained artificially would in time develop a distinct species characteristic, resulting ultimately in an hermaphroditic product. Such experiments begun with the simpler organisms and continued through higher forms, ultimately in the Human, indicate the return path to Man's original estate under conditions and exercise of free-will.

**Psychic and Mental Indications.**—The psychic and mental indications of the transition, the accomplishment of which is, needless to say, aeons distant, are also evident. First, the teaching of a higher creative estate by multitudinous schools of "New" Thought, and the exercise of the mental creative faculties; secondly, the desire for motherhood by thousands of women who will not pay the penalty of becoming the human chattels of men for the privilege, yet who insist upon the recognition of their inherent right to become mothers. And both these forces are becoming powerful levers in the present unsettled state of domestic relationships.

**Gonochorismus.**—Gonochorismus or sexual separation, requiring reciprocal relations between the divided sexes, is the universal method of propagation among the higher animals and Humans. In this form, every individual produces only one form of generative substance. The females produce eggs, egg-cells or ova. The males produce the fructifying sperma, which, like that of the Cryptogama, consists of floating, vibratile cells actively moving in a fluid, the zoosperms, spermatozoa, or sperm cells.

**Parthenogenesis.**—Parthenogenesis or virginal reproduction is the interesting form of transition from sexual reproduction to the non-sexual formation of germ cells and occurs among many insects. In this case cells become capable of developing themselves into new individuals without requiring the fructifying seed. The phenomenon has been noted even in the case of Humans, and has been well attested.<sup>19</sup>

**Every Being has a male and female nature.**—From his original hermaphroditic estate, Man has preserved the dual nature, male and female, internally. That is, every man and every woman retains physiologically and psychologically some evidence of the opposite sex, not only in the rudimentary organs but in temperament, intuitive faculties and mental traits. There is so much of the female in every man, and so much of the male in every female that it has actually been reduced to specific law, as given by C. G. Leland, "THAT IN PROPORTION TO MALE DEVELOPMENTS IN WOMAN, OR THE FEMALE IN MAN, THERE IS A CORRESPONDING MASCULINE OR FEMININE DEGREE OF MENTALITY."<sup>20</sup>

**Alternation of incarnations; effeminacy.**—This is more readily understood by Rosicrucian students when the alternation, exact or comparative, of sex polarities in succeeding incarnations is recalled. In the light of that truth, it may be seen not only how we preserve the dual nature, but how it is apt to preponderate according to the previous incarnation. A woman, say, who for the purpose of accomplishing a definite work, has had several successive incarnations as a female, on incarnating as a male, will manifest to a marked degree the feminine nature, which is ordinarily termed "effeminacy." Vice versa, masculinity is also noted in many women.

**Sexual secondary characteristics.**—Besides the sexual secondary characteristics, such as the antlers of the stag, the mane of the lion, tail of the peacock, spurs of the cock and beard of the

man; the developed breasts and lactatory glands of the female as distinguishing features of sexual separation, we may note in passing the gradual abortion or deletion of the little toes of both sexes, the deletion of bodily hair or hirsute coverings, except as sexual characteristics, and the differentiation between the combative and the creative instincts, selective and protective in both sexes.

**How the Homo is differentiated; At-One-Ment.**—The Human being is differentiated principally by sexual separation. Woman or Womb-Man is woman only through her ovaries. Man is man only through his testes. Humanity is at present Divinity in diversity. The return to hermaphroditism will mean the At-One-Ment of Humanity with itself and its At-One-Ment with Divinity, or complete Unity.



FIG. 62  
TYPE OF THE AVERAGE HUMAN FOOT, SHOWING THE GRADUAL DELETION OF THE LITTLE TOE.

**How one species reacts upon another.**—The differentiation and even the extinction of species is often caused by the smallest incidents. For instance, in Paraguay, the horse and ox nearly became extinct due to the laying of eggs by flies in the navels of newly born calves and foals, thus causing umbilical infection. Thus one department of nature can react powerfully upon a totally distinct and separate division.<sup>21</sup>

**Protective conditions.**—In studying the Kingdoms we must not omit to observe that while Man is now left to devise his own protective conditions through the exercise of his creative faculties and free-will, Nature through the Group Spirits is still attentive to the requirements of her multitudinous children. Examples of this protective care are seen in the formation and colorings

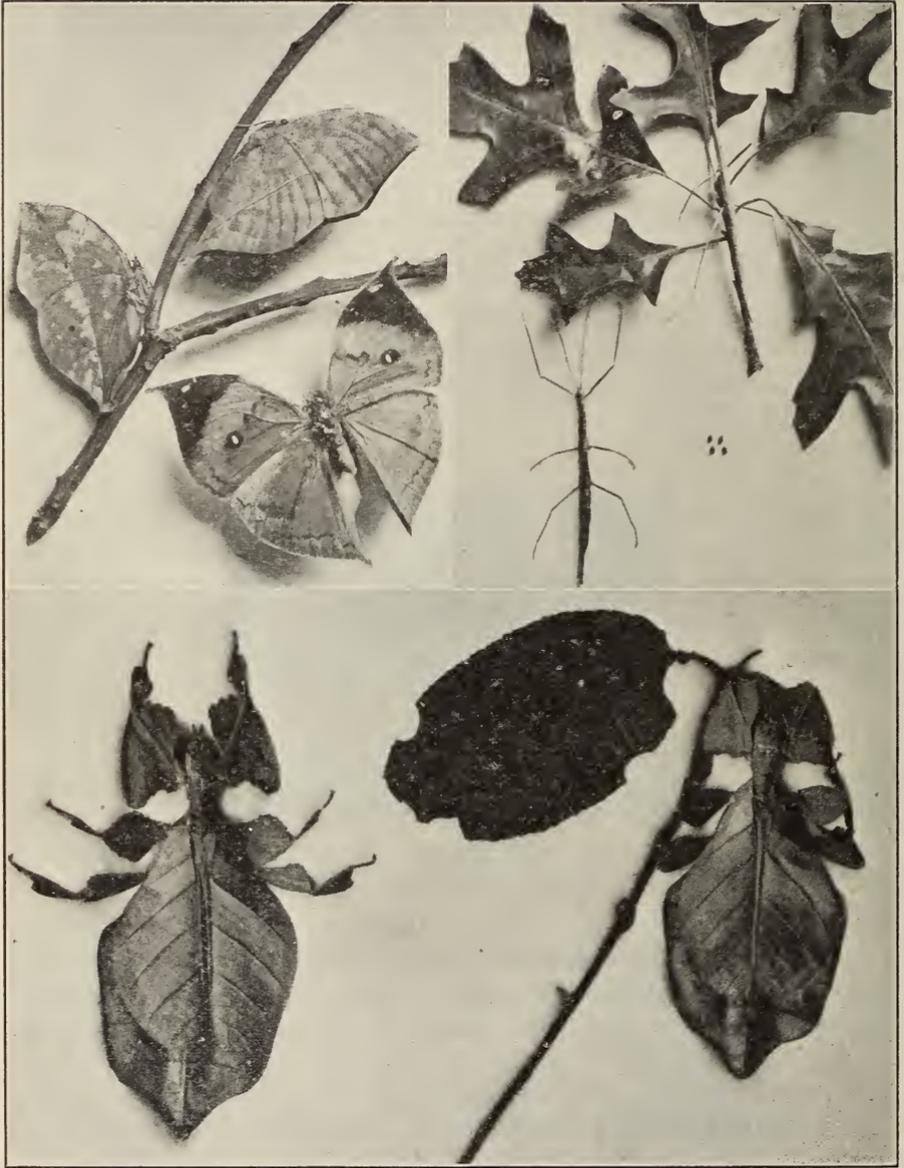


FIG. 63

Natural protective features showing how the formation and coloring of many of the lower forms are adapted to environment and habitat. Upper left, the Indian Kalima Butterfly exactly resembling a tropical leaf even to the mid rib. Right, The "Walking Stick" so closely resembling a twig that it must be disturbed in order to be discerned. Lower, The Indian "Walking Leaf," even the legs of which are leaf-like in appearance.

—(Photos by Brown Bros. N. Y.)

adapted to environment and habitat. An illustration of this is shown in the case of the Indian Kalima Butterfly, which, when its wings are closed, can hardly be distinguished from the leaves of the tree it frequents.

**The Porcupine Family.**—As a persistence from the reptilian age, we have albinism and again, in the famous Lambert family of London in the last century, the perpetuation of scales. This family was commonly known as the “porcupine family.” Edward Lambert, born 1717, was remarkable for his monstrous skin formation. His whole body was covered with “a horny substance, about an inch thick, which rose in the shape of numerous thorn-shaped and scale-like processes, more than an inch long.” This formation was transmitted to his sons and grandsons, but not to his granddaughters.<sup>22</sup>

**God is Evolution.**—In considering the vestigial remains of past evolution, we must not forget that the evidences of present and future progress are equally notable. For “God Himself is Evolution, embracing all things, especially Himself, the Self-evolved, ever working in mysterious ways His wonders to perform—the Maker and the Made.”<sup>23</sup>



FIG. 64

A SOLAR ECLIPSE. SHOWING PROMINENCES 47,000 MILES  
HIGH. YERKES EXPEDITION, GREEN RIVER,  
WYOMING, JUNE 8, 1918.

**Awed, but not terrified; Solar Eruptions and Vulcanism.**—We may be awed but not terrified by the tremendous operations of nature constantly going on about us. We may view with interest but not fear the solar eruptions such as those of 1878, the ascent of which were at the rate of 400,000 miles an hour, sending enormous jets of incandescent and metallic vapors hundreds of thousands of miles out into space at a temperature of 1700 degrees. The magnetic waves of that eruption and of recent activities are known to have revived apparently extinct volcanoes and increased the activities of others. This was effected by the magnetic waves penetrating the gas pockets beneath the volcanoes, inaugurating electrical activity which expands the gas, causing it to force its way through the crater core.<sup>24</sup>

**Human Mind Stuff evolving; Measurements of the Atom and the Electron.**—The Human Mind stuff through which the Ego can understand and explain such phenomena is constantly developing towards a true vehicle, and Man will ever be in the forefront of evolutionary processes and develop the intelligence required to meet the exigencies of nature's activities, be they what they may. The power of the Divine Intelligence operating through the Human Ego enabling it to understand the magnitude of celestial operations, and reversely to measure the Atom at 300,000,000 to the inch and the Electron at 30,000,000,000,000 to the inch, may be safely relied upon to maintain Man's supremacy in the gradually increasing control of the nature forces, which in some aeon-distant age will be completely his to command, so far as our limited solar system is concerned. Yet the comparative insignificance of our solar system may be understood when we realize that a cube whose sides were equal to the distance across the nebula near Vega would hold hundreds of millions of similar solar systems.<sup>25</sup>

**Area of our Solar System.**—Yet our own solar system with its sun, eight planets, twenty-seven moons and eight hundred asteroids occupies an area whose diameter is approximately 6,000,000,000 miles<sup>26</sup> and "the power developed by a million Niagaras in a million years would not equal the energy expended by the Earth in a single second as it circles around the sun."<sup>27</sup>

**Our Atmosphere.**—As part of the Earth-aura, our atmosphere extends upwards of 40 miles and more<sup>28</sup> and is the great protection against too rapid loss of Earth's heat by radiation.

**Human evolutionary evidences.**—Humanity is progressing, is in a state of continuous change and transition. Physical indications are not wanting. The differentiation between hands and feet

in Man is pronounced. The hands are able to perform the most delicate manipulations, but in his advance from earlier types Man has lost the power to flex his toes to the same degree of facility. Man can join his thumb and little finger, but the orang utang with the same bones and muscles cannot do so. An examination of human skeletons shows that the first seven pairs of ribs join the breast bone, whereas all of them once did. The finger and toe nails are the refined evolutionary resultant of the claws with which Man once tore his food. Human teeth are the modified placoid scales still found in sharks. The canine teeth are the oldest survivals and are a reminder of the day when all teeth were "sharp-pointed, hold-fast organs." The development of the molars and incisors is the result of the gradually refined process of mastication.<sup>29</sup>

**Teeth.**—Formerly Man had, as do the sharks, row after row of teeth in reserve. Now he has but one replacement, the "permanent" teeth which replace the so-called "milk-teeth." The late

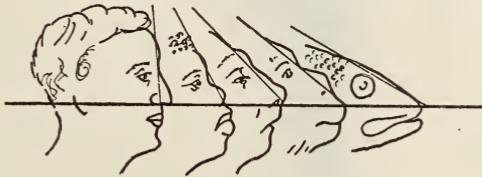


FIG. 65  
HOW THE HUMAN FACIAL ANGLE WAS EVOLVED.  
(After Witkowski.)

appearance of the wisdom teeth and sometimes their failure to appear at all may be an evidence that in continuance of this deleting phase of evolution, future man may be toothless. At least when he ceases to be carnivorous he may expect great modifications in his teeth. It is also interesting to note that the vertebrae of the spinal column decrease with age and growth. A baby has thirty-three or four, while in young manhood they are reduced to twenty-six.<sup>30</sup> Also in the higher mammals the persistence of the seven cervical vertebrae has been pointed out by Dr. A. B. Allen.

**Skull.**—The skull always furnishes most interest to the student. The diagram outlines its development from the fish stage. Bones grow principally by being broken down, and this furnishes the greatest opportunity for evolving Man to effect the necessary

changes in his Physical Body, as he builds and rebuilds from incarnation to incarnation. The jaw of the baby, for instance, does not grow by simply being added to. On the contrary, all the material of which it is composed is gradually broken down little by little and reassembled before the adult jawbone is formed.

**Osteoblastic cells.**—This reassembling of the bone tissue is performed by cells designated as osteoblasts, and the breaking down by cells called osteoclasts. When the activities of the latter predominate, the bones shrink, and this we see exemplified in ex-

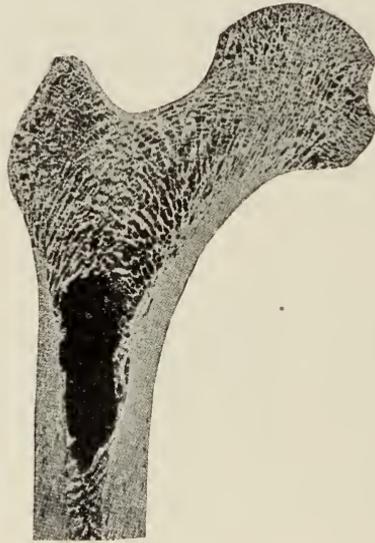


FIG. 66  
SECTIONAL VIEW OF HUMAN BONE, SHOWING NATURE'S  
MARVELOUS ENGINEERING AND STRUCTURAL SKILL

treme old age when chin and nose sometimes almost seem to meet, especially if the teeth are gone.<sup>31</sup> Besides this, we have the complete renewal of the Physical Body every seven years.

**Blood cells.**—This process is especially interesting when we consider the purpose of the bones besides that of support. This purpose is the production of red blood cells in their marrow tissue. The number of these red blood cells, exclusive of the white corpuscles produced and the number regulated by the spleen, is about 75,000,000,000.<sup>32</sup> Each cell is known to live but ten days and therefore a new supply must be constantly coming from the bone marrow. The chief purpose of the white corpuscles, it may be explained, is to fight disease.<sup>33</sup>

**Natural and artificial light.**—Another evolutionary phase which ordinarily goes unnoticed is man's adaptation to the use of artificial light, thus lengthening the hours of his activity and productiveness; while the animals and vegetable life forms are still obedient to primal conditions and regulate their activities by the rising and the setting of the sun. This adaptation to artificial light has been applied to stimulating hens to lay more than their ordinary daily quota of eggs.

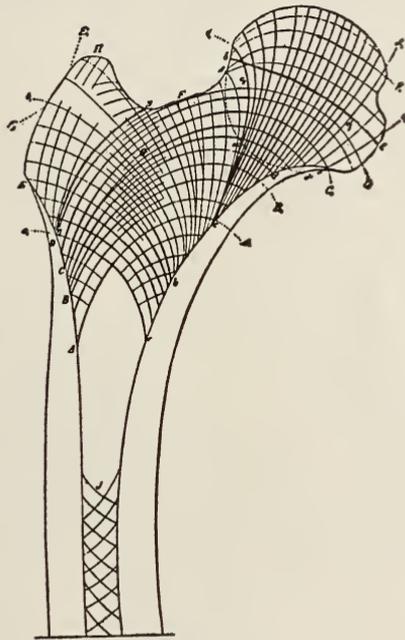


FIG. 67

DIAGRAMMATIC SECTION OF FIG. 66 SHOWING WONDERFUL PLAN OF BONE STRUCTURE, AS CAREFULLY DETERMINED BY NATURE AS THOUGH BY THE MOST SKILFUL ENGINEER. ANOTHER EVIDENCE OF THE DIRECTIVE INTELLIGENCE OPERATING THROUGH WHAT ARE COMMONLY CALLED THE "FORCES OF NATURE."

**Additional evolutionary reminders.**—A reminder of our great progress that also remains overlooked is the thickness of the skin on the soles of our feet. This is not due, as ordinarily supposed, to the constant pressure upon them of the weight of the body, but is a persistence of one of the amphibian forms of man in his ascent, called the "Mud-puppy," which had thickened soles. Our feet have changed in shape, but have never fully relinquished the thickness of skin for the delicacy which the other parts of the



FIG. 68  
MESA VERDE CLIFF DWELLINGS, ANCIENT REMAINS OF A  
PRE-HISTORIC RACE IN COLORADO.

—(Photo by J. Walter Fewkes, Ph.D., Courtesy Scientific American.)

body have attained.<sup>34</sup> The fact that man has hair on the chest but not on the back is a result of his earlier life when the chest muscles and arms required full play, while the back needed

to be covered for protection. This subject of the human hair is exceedingly important, for it gives many clues to man's ancestry, prominent among which is the fact, for instance, that the hair on the arm runs from shoulder to elbow, while from the wrist it runs to the elbow, similar to the course noted on the anthropoids.<sup>35</sup>

**Pre-historic Man, Grand Gulch, Utah.**—Nature is persistent in her evolutionary urge, and yet extremely reticent in relinquishing any well established forms. The study of the skulls and remains of the pre-historic race recently discovered in Grand Gulch, southeastern Utah, antedating even the cliff-dwellers, proves to a great extent Man's evolution not from the monkey, but independently from a high order of aboriginal anthropoids. The Cro-Magnon men of the Cro-Magnon races found in Europe were fully equal to the highest existing human races so far as skull development and



FIG. 69  
THE CASA GRANDE RUIN. RELICS OF A PRE-HISTORIC RACE  
IN SOUTHERN ARIZONA, COVERING 620 ACRES.

cranial possibilities are concerned, while the Neanderthal men, also found in Europe, were lower than any existing human races.<sup>36</sup> Both were of the Pleistocene sub-division.

Our world is growing bigger and better, Man is advancing, and all the lower Kingdoms are in close pursuit. Our earth has an area of about 200,000,000 square miles.\* On this target are being thrown planetary fragments, exclusive of the planetary dust, amounting to the enormous number of 146,000,000,000 per annum.<sup>37</sup> Little by little this accumulation with its psychometric values is exercising a definite influence upon our environment, imperceptible now, but later on bringing into our mental sphere the

\*To be exact, 196,940,000 square miles.

aura of other worlds. Man is improving, perfecting, discarding the obsolete, developing the newer and better forms and mental characteristics.

**Man leads and prepares the way.**—Man has prepared the way for the lower Kingdoms to progress much more rapidly. What he has accomplished through incredible time periods lower forms are already attaining. In the micro-organism *Freia-elegans*, a ciliated infusorian of the family of Stentoines, Claparede and Lachmann have described a visual organ or eye, “immediately behind the point of truncation” in “a lunate spot of intense black.”<sup>38</sup> This is the exact manner in which sight was first developed in the time approximately beginning with the later Lemurians and definitely accomplished by the early Atlanteans.

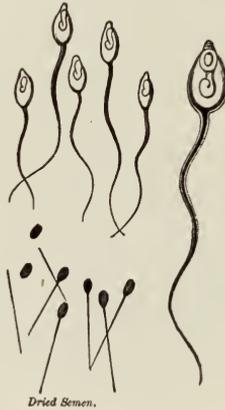


FIG. 70  
SPERMATOZOA, HUMAN, RECENT AND DRIED.

(After Hollick.)

**Man repeats the activities of the lower cells.**—Man repeats on a large scale the activities of the cells that compose his substance. The male seeks the female in copulation. The female is actuated by two sets of motor impulses, one to receive the advances of the male, the other to repel them, although the latter is more seeming than real. The male seeks energetically. So likewise do the cellular elements in creative activity. “The spermatozoid and the ovule . . . repeat on a small scale what the two individuals perform in their larger sphere. Thus, it is the spermatozoid that, in its capacity of male element, goes in quest of the female. It possesses, in view of the journeys it has to make, organs of locomotion that are lacking in the female and useless to

it. The spermatozoid of man and of a great number of mammals is equipped with a long tail, the end of which describes a circular conical movement, which together with its rotation about its axis, determines the forward movement of the spermatozoid. (In search of the egg.) The same mode of progression is seen in the zoospores of Algae and in Mastigophores, which are armed with flagella."<sup>39</sup>

**Importance of cell activities; Basis of organic life in protoplasm.**—In spite of possible concepts to the contrary, we have not laid too much stress on the importance of cell activity nor of reproductive processes in these Instructions, for the basis of organic life activities in manifestation or concrete expression are embodied therein. Science has made great advances in its knowledge of the composition of protoplasm. Dr. MacDougal has found

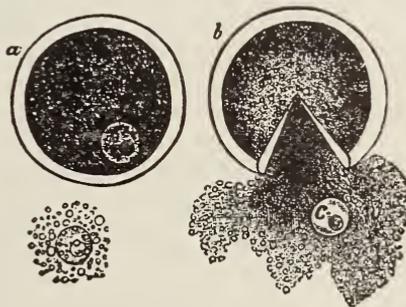


FIG. 71

HUMAN EGG, OR OVUM. a. SHOWS THE PARENT CELL CONTAINING THE PRIMITIVE GERM. b. THE PARENT CELL RUPTURED AND THE OVUM ESCAPING. THIS IS THE FIRST STAGE OF A POSSIBLE FUTURE HOMO. THE OVUM IS SHOWN HIGHLY MAGNIFIED.  
—(After Hollick.)

that the living matter of plants was composed of three principal substances, “the pentoses of mucilages, the albumens of their derivatives and some fatty substances.” The protoplasm of most plants is composed largely of the first named group of substances, of which a common example is gum arabic. These three main components do not dissolve or diffuse into each other, and hence exist simply as finely divided particles intimately mixed, and the surfaces between the particles of different kinds of matter give opportunity for the play of molecular forces which constitute the essential energy of protoplasm.

**Not a universal formula.**—Protoplasm made up in this way is sometimes miscible or soluble in water, and at other times not. . . . It is not to be taken for granted that this is a universal

formula. Specialized organs, or cells, eggs, spores, pollen cells, etc., may have a protoplasm in which the protein material may make up almost the entire solid matter.<sup>40</sup>

**What Rosicrucians teach.**—It is the Rosicrucian teaching that protoplasm will be found to be the material basis of life, all its component parts being differentiations of the primal substance, with Heredity-Chromatin Energy as the motive power, and the Cell as the vehicle, that form the key to the mysteries of manifested organic life.

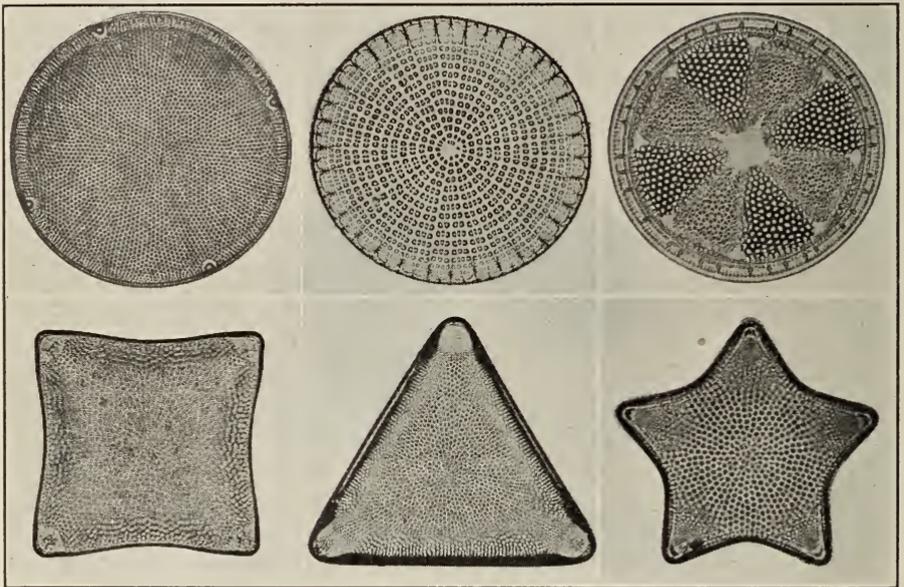


Fig. 72

DIATOMACEAE. FROM MICROPHOTOGRAPHS BY P. O. GRAVELLE. UPPER ROW; LEFT TO RIGHT.—AULACODISCUS RADIATUS, TAMPA BAY, FLA. ARACHNOIDISCUS INDICUS, EHR., SENDAI, JAPAN. ACTINOPTYCHUS HELIOPELTA, EHR., LOWER.—TRIGONIUM ARCTICUM, (*Bright*) CL., SENDAI, JAPAN, AS ALSO THE TWO FOLLOWING.

**Adherence to PLAN of Crystalloidal Matter; Diatomaceae.**—No organisms better illustrate the adherence to the plan of crystalloidal matter mentioned on page 256 of this Instruction, and previously, than the low types known as diatoms, or the diatomaceae. The diatomaceae are microscopic unicellular algae inhabiting fresh and salt water. Each individual or frustule consists of two more or less symmetrical silicified halves.<sup>41</sup>

**Where found.**—Diatoms, radiolarians and sponges “have skeletons composed of hydrated silica, mineralogically opal, and are

found principally in the environment of granitic and other igneous rocks, the essential constituents of these rocks being the lime-soda feld spars from which the sodium of the ocean has since been leached. Waters issuing from such rocks are, as a rule, relatively richer in silica than waters issuing from modern sedimentary areas."<sup>42</sup>

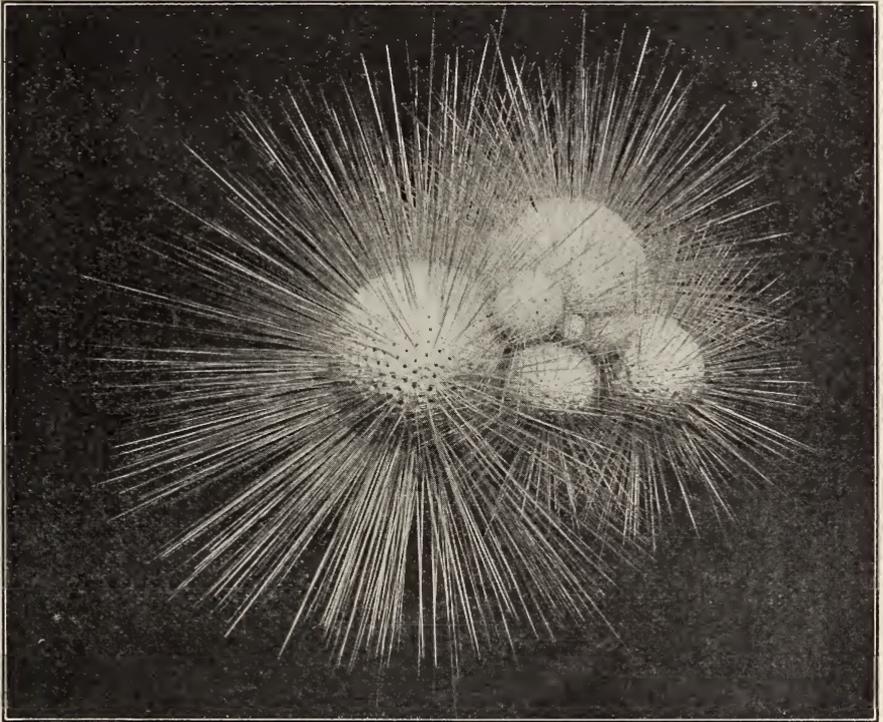


FIG. 73  
GLASS MODEL OF A FORAMINIFERA; GLOBIGERINA  
BULLOIDES.  
—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**What they indicate.**—Small as they are, these diatoms and other micro-organisms indicate how man has utilized all the gradually accreting chemical compounds in his ascent from “original slime,” for to imagine the earth in its primitive, exoterically lifeless state we must, as Prof. Osborn says, “subtract all those portions of mineral deposits which as they exist today are mainly of organic origin, such as the organic carbonates and phosphates of lime, the carbonaceous limestones, the graphites derived from carbon, the silicates derived from diatoms, the iron deposits made by

bacteria, the humus of the soil containing organic acids, the soil derived from the rocks which are broken up by the bacteria, and even the ooze from the ocean floor, both calcareous and silicious, formed from the shells of foraminifera and the skeletons of diatoms."

**Earth's surface primitively different.**—"Thus, before the appearance of bacteria, of algae, of foraminifera, and of the lower plants and lowly derived invertebrates, the surface of the earth was totally different from what it is at present; and thus the present chemical composition of terrestrial matter, of the sea and of the air . . . is by no means the same as its primordial composition 80,000,000 years ago.<sup>43</sup>

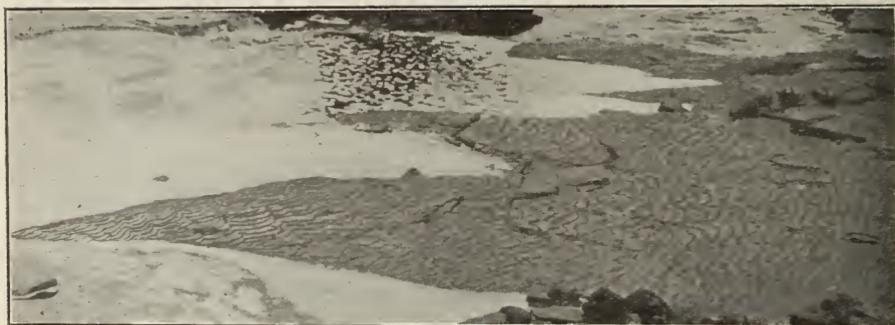


FIG. 74  
 CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST,  
 RIPPLE MARKS ON LEDGES AT AUSABLE CHASM.  
 THESE ARE NOT ALONE OF GEOLOGICAL INTEREST BUT  
 ALSO AS MUTE EVIDENCES OF A PERIOD WHEN THE  
 PROPORTION OF WATER TO LAND DISTRIBUTION  
 WAS MUCH GREATER THAN NOW.

(Photo by Parsell.)

**Ocean originally fresh; Volume of salt and origin.**—Assuming on the consensus of best authority that the ocean, primitively a fresh-water body, is less than 100,000,000 years old, and that it has received approximately 63,000,000 tons of sodium yearly, which has united with its equivalent of chlorine to form the salt (NaCl) of the sea, we may understand how the ocean itself has been no slight contributory to the evolutionary processes and the liberation of the Mineral Spirits. Analyses of ocean water and the body fluid of the highest animals, the blood serum, shows interesting comparisons. The table is appended:

**Table of Comparisons between Sea-Water and Blood serum.—**

Life Elements	Sea Water	Blood Serum
Sodium .....	30.59	39.0
Magnesium .....	3.79	0.4
Calcium .....	1.20	1.0
Potassium .....	1.11	2.7
Chlorine .....	55.27	45.0
SO <sub>4</sub> (Sulphur Tetroxide) .....	7.66	.....
CO <sub>3</sub> (Carbon Trioxide) .....	0.21	12.0
Bromine .....	0.19	.....
P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> (Phosphorus Pentoxide) .....	.....	0.4 <sup>44</sup>

**What Rosicrucianism emphasizes.**—Many excellent occult writers assume to deal intimately with vast periods in creative and evolutionary progress, but ignore the minutiae and detail. Rosicrucianism is actively interested in all such time periods, world planes or regions, regional sub-divisions, etc., but while it realizes the importance of recognizing in the Sun the parent of our solar system it also emphasizes the necessity for an accurate knowledge of all forms of life upon our own planet as the immediate, definite, tangible basis of our knowledge of Man's true ancestry.

**Importance of the Algae; Carbon and Crust Formers.**—Therefore in the study of Man's evolutionary progress as an organic being comprehending within himself both material and spiritual natures and elements, Rosicrucianism invites the student to contemplate—not so much his lofty position as a human being, but the simple Algae of which mention has already been made. They, with the diatoms and bacteria as carbon-formers, anticipated the animal world as factors in the actual formation of the Earth's crust.<sup>45</sup>

**Primordial Seas.**—The surface of primordial continental seas was literally covered with minute algae which served principally as food for the floating protozoa, while the diatoms, minute, floating plants "especially characteristic of the cooler seas," formed the siliceous ooze bottoms.<sup>46</sup>

**First forms of life upon our planet.**—The answer to the query, "what was the first form of life found upon our planet?" is answered by the study of the algae. Prof. Loeb states that "in 1883 the small island of Krakatoa was destroyed by the most violent volcanic eruption on record. A visit to the island two months after the eruption showed that the three islands were covered with pumice and layers of ash reaching on an average a thickness of thirty meters and frequently sixty meters."<sup>47</sup> Of

course all life on the islands was extinct. When Treub in 1886 first visited the island, he found that the blue-green algae were the first colonists on the pumice and on the exposed blocks of rock in the ravines on the mountain slopes. Investigations made during subsequent expeditions demonstrated the association of diatoms and bacteria (with the algae).<sup>48</sup>

“The algae referred to were, according to Euler, of the nostoc type. Nostoc does not require sugar, since it can produce that

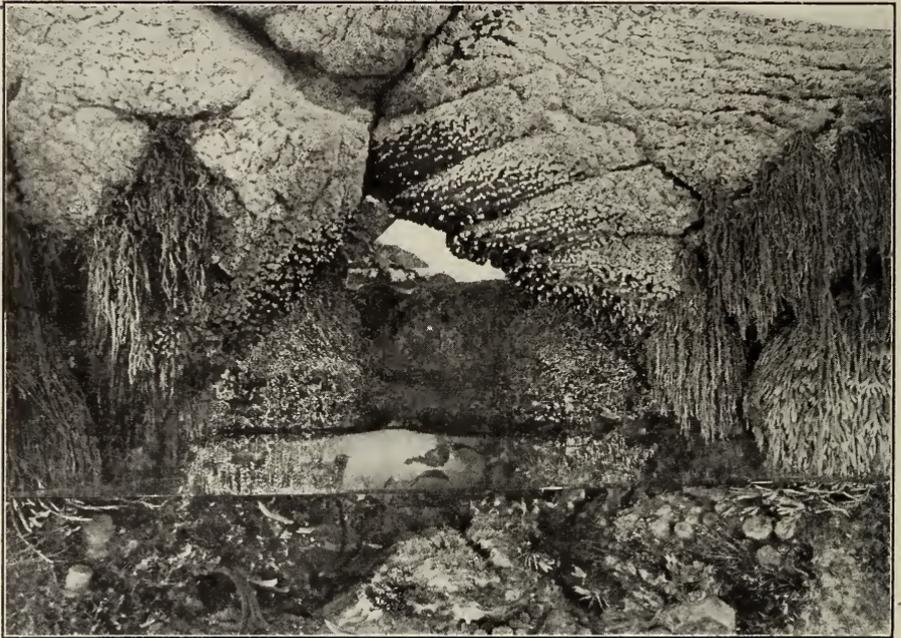


FIG. 75  
 NAHANT, MASS. FRONT VIEW OF TIDE POOL GROUP, SHOW-  
 ING ENTIRE GROUP FROM ABOVE WATER SURFACE.  
 —(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

compound from the  $\text{CO}_2$  of the air by the activity of its chlorophyll. This organism possesses also the power of assimilating the free nitrogen of the air. From these observations and because the Nostocaceae generally appear as the first settlers on sand, the conclusion has been drawn that they or the group of Schizophyceae to which they belong FORMED THE FIRST SETTLERS OF OUR PLANET.”<sup>49</sup>

**Prof. Loeb's explanation.**—Referring once more to the statement that “living matter displays the energy of colloidal and the

plan of crystalloidal matter” and realizing that Man is the epitome of differentiation between living and non-living matter, we may accept the explanation of Prof. Loeb, that “the essential difference between living and non-living matter consists then in this: the living cell synthesizes its own complicated specific material from indifferent or non-specific simple compounds of the surrounding medium, while the crystal simply adds the molecules found in its super-saturated solution. This synthetic power of transforming



FIG. 76  
A LIVING ALGAL POOL COLONY.

(Photo by Parsell.)

small “building stones” into the complicated compounds specific for each organism is the “secret of life,” or rather one of the “secrets of life.”<sup>50</sup>

**Man becomes proud, then humble.**—Man may view with pride his present lofty position in the evolutionary status of life; he may view with pride the really marvelous products of his brain and hand co-operating, but he becomes humble when he realizes through a study of earlier forms from the most minute, through the most gigantic, that his present form, composition and mental status is resultant only upon the destruction and abolition of incalculable myriads of previous types or models.

**Archetypes only, are prepared in the Inner Worlds.**—Many students of occult science have come to believe themselves so close to the “inner worlds” that they look with disdain on the salient facts and truths, stranger than any fiction, of the physical world. It is a popularly accepted belief among many students of Rosicrucian and Theosophic literature, that all the work of building new types, forms and human bodies is done while in the archetypal regions of the inner worlds.

**Their realization is the function of the Physical World.**—The belief just referred to is founded on misconception of all the conditions involved. The archetypes of new forms, types and better vehicles, physical and otherwise, ARE devised and instituted in the appropriate region therefor in the inner worlds, but the tangible realization or accomplishment of them IS CARRIED OUT IN THE PHYSICAL WORLD.

**New bodies come only by evolutionary process.**—Because Egos who are now in the spiritual regions may be studying how to build better bodies for a future incarnation, it does not mean that they will be able in that incarnation to construct exactly the vehicle they now devise or think out. Before them are set, by the Hierarchies, examples of highly developed bodies that will be the types extant in future ages, BUT THE ATTAINMENT OF THOSE TYPES WILL HAVE TO BE WORKED OUT BY THE SLOW PROCESS OF EVOLUTION IN AGES TO COME, just as we have worked up to our present status through ages past and through countless primary forms and types.

**Our ancestor, the Shark.**—Man may learn of his future by studying his past, and it is for this reason that the Rosicrucian philosophy lays such stress on the importance of knowledge of our earlier and evolutionary form. Man laughs with amusement when he is told by science that the common hen is a first cousin to the alligator,<sup>59</sup> but he is apt to resent the idea that he, in common with the hen, has inherited definite characteristics, cerebral and anatomical, from the shark. Yet this dreaded amphibian is the primordial ancestor from whom much of the present organic life has inherited well defined features.

**Ears and Movable Jaws.**—To the shark we owe our ears and movable jaws. The real beginnings of the true brain as such go back to the worm *Amphioxus*, while in the common ancestors of the shark and man two structural developments of great importance appear. The first, as stated, is the development of ears, the

shark being the only fish with true ears. Secondly the development of the hinged jaw, movable at will and PERMITTING THE DEVELOPMENT OF SPEECH. The leverage power of the human jaw is estimated at 10 lbs. That of the shark is 162 times greater.<sup>51</sup>

**Tuatera; Pineal or Third Eye.**—Men smile with condescension at the idea of a “third eye” when informed as to past functions of the Pineal Gland. Yet in the American Museum of Natural History, New York, in 1916, there were two specimens of the rare and almost extinct Tuatera, or “*Sphenodon punctatum*,” of New Zealand, looking exactly as did its ancestors of 6,000,000 years ago in Jurassic times.<sup>52</sup>

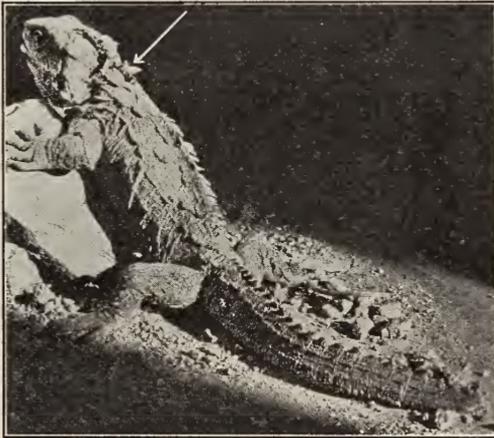


FIG. 77

TUATERA. SPHENODON PUNCTATUM. NEW ZEALAND. THE ARROW POINTS TO THE PINEAL EYE.

—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Pineal Eye and Third Optic Nerve.**—In this little “monster” of about two feet in length, the Pineal Eye was quite prominent, situated at the union of neck and body; a round protuberance of approximately the size of a homeopathic pill, grayish in color and covered with translucent skin. In every animal with a backbone there is a third optic nerve, and the modern discoveries concerning the importance of the Pineal Gland in Man show his inheritance from the past, of powerful, potent faculties, NOW DORMANT.

**The Trilobite.**—An example of the myriad processes and types through which the Life Wave has worked its way in evolutionary

progress is shown by the Insecta. The forms, types and species are almost innumerable, yet in the Trilobite we have the Father of all the insects of to-day.<sup>53</sup>

Nature is at least consistent. The multitudinous phases of evolutionary process through which the lower forms up to the human have progressed are illustrated in every classification. We have shown examples of the Insecta, Reptilian and Amphibian forms.

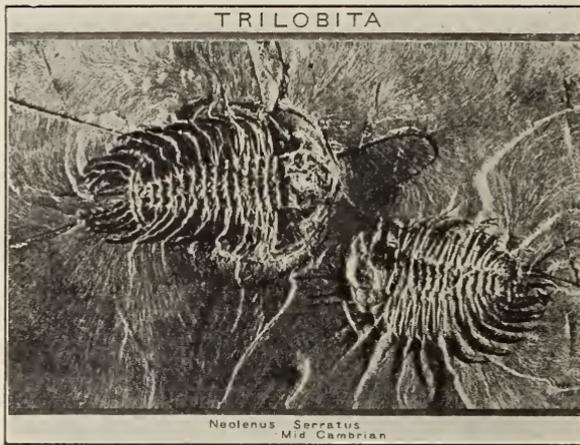


FIG. 78

TRILOBITE. (*Trilobita neolenus*.)

—(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Evolution of the Horse; Eohippus.**—The same is illustrated in the evolution of the horse. From the “Dawn Horse” of Wyoming, known as the “Eohippus,” no larger than a small fox terrier, and with four toes, to the splendid companion of man of today is at least 3,000,000 years.<sup>54</sup> Evolution is a slow but sure process and the differentiation both as to size, anatomical development and intelligence in the case of the horse is paralleled by the similar evolution of Man from pre-historic times to his present attainment. From both of these examples we may assume equal differentiation in as many ages to come, and therefore to a development, expansion, mental and intellectual growth beyond our present imagination.

**Principle underlies everything.**—The examples and instances cited in these Instructions are not presented for the purpose of furnishing interesting reading, but to emphasize the importance of

one thing—PRINCIPLE. In this case it is the Principle underlying all the transitional forms, types and species which have contributed to give the homo his present place “in the sun.” Principle is everything, underlies everything; “therefore, if we study the principle which is the foundation of the universal law, we shall understand Man’s relationships to the universe. Study of Principle leads to comprehension OF DETAIL, BECAUSE DETAIL IS BUT THE WORKING OUT OF PRINCIPLE IN ALL THE VARIED PHASES OF LIFE MANIFESTATION.”<sup>55</sup>

THE AMERICAN MUSEUM OF NATURAL HISTORY, NEW YORK.

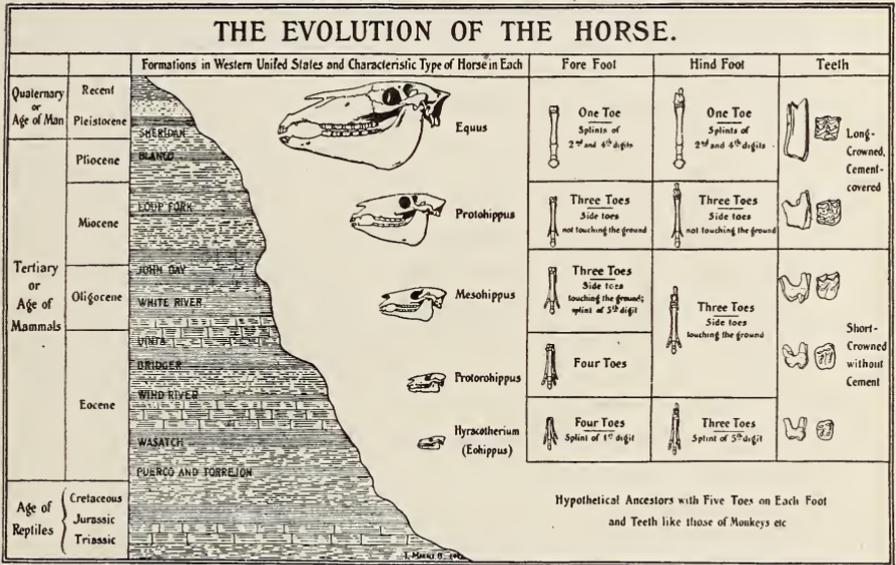


FIG. 79  
 CHART SHOWING THE EVOLUTIONARY DEVELOPMENT  
 OF THE HORSE.  
 —(Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Catching vibrations from Nature’s Thought Waves.**—Matter and Energy being considered as two phases of the same condition, we may say that Nature, or the Expression of the Divine Intelligence, has vibrated from original Matter or Cosmic Root Substance, everything into being, from the condensation of atomic nebulae to suns and planets. And when our individual comprehension becomes attuned to the higher phases of being, the scientific-spiritual state of consciousness, we may catch vibrations from Nature’s “infinite thought waves” and then shall we truly know that all Life is related, not bound by earthly or material laws or limitations, and our thoughts may penetrate the realms of the universe and solve the sublime mystery of its yet unknown laws.

## QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 11

1. What is Humanity said to be?
2. What two interims between Involution and Evolution are noted?
3. How does the Mineral Spirit adjust itself?
4. How is assimilation by Vegetable and Animal spirits effected?
5. What does living matter display?
6. What is the evolution of living matter?
7. With what is each separate cell invested?
8. In treating of the cell, what physical correspondencies are given?
9. What cell correspondencies are given?
10. What egg correspondencies are given?
11. How many stages in the descent of the human race have been traced by Haeckel?
12. What does every homo recapitulate?
13. What was the origin of the power of selection?
14. To what is the cell consciousness inferior?
15. Is the present human form its final one?
16. Are there such things as cast off human models? If so, how may that be?
17. Define Ontogeny, Phylogeny and Epigenesis.
18. What are "degenerate forms"?
19. Give examples of them.
20. What are vestigial or rudimentary organs?
21. What was the discovery of Goethe regarding the human skull?
22. Of what importance to man was the ascent of the spiritual currents?
23. Give examples of the rudimentary organs.
24. What significance have our ear lobes?
25. What is the third eye-lid?
26. What evidences do we find among reptiles?
27. What evidences do we find among plants?
28. What discovery of Goethe's can be found in human embryos?
29. What are the vertebrae coccygeae?
30. What was the origin of the mammary glands?
31. What significance have gill-clefts for us?
32. What is the esoteric meaning of the "Cable-tow"?
33. What are the human prostate and clitoris said to be?
34. What is meant by Urschleim or Original Slime?

35. What are the Infusoria?
36. On what did Cuvier, Linnaeus and Agassiz agree?
37. What is each cell said to be?
38. What sexual differentiation is noted by Rosicrucian science?
39. Give examples of Hermaphroditism in the Kingdoms.
40. What is the transition phase to sexual separation?
41. Who were the Luciferians?
42. What was the Fall of Man?
43. What was the Temptation of Adam and Eve?
44. What is meant by Salvation and Redemption?
45. Give an example of the transformation of sex.
46. What is the importance of this experiment?
47. What psychic and mental indications are present?
48. Explain Gonochorismus.
49. Explain Parthenogenesis.
50. How does every male have a female nature and vice versa?
51. Do incarnations alternate strictly as to sex?
52. Explain effeminacy.
53. Name some secondary sexual characteristics.
54. How is the homo differentiated?
55. What is at-one-ment?
56. How does one species react on another?
57. Instance some natural protective conditions.
58. Explain the "porcupine family."
59. Give an additional definition of evolution.
60. What is the extent of some notable solar eruptions?
61. What is the status of the human mind stuff?
62. What are the relative measurements of the atom and electron?
63. What is the area of our solar system?
64. How high does our atmosphere extend?
65. Give some human evolutionary evidences.
66. What do the human teeth indicate?
67. Is the human skull of steady, permanent growth?
68. What are osteoblastic and osteoclastic cells?
69. Where do the blood cells originate?
70. What does the use of artificial light indicate?
71. Give additional evidences of human evolution.
72. What does the pre-historic man of Grand Gulch indicate and help to prove?
73. What is man's mission in evolution?
74. What does man repeat and how?

75. Where is the basis of organic life found?
76. What do Rosicrucians teach regarding Protoplasm?
77. What are the diatomaceae?
78. What do they indicate?
79. What is the origin and volume of ocean salt?
80. Give comparisons between ocean water and human blood.
81. What is the importance of the Algae?
82. What was the first form of life on our planet?
83. How and where are archetypes worked out?
84. What is the importance to the student, of the shark?
85. What is the Tuatera?
86. What confirmation have we of the ultimate destiny of our planet?
87. What is it that underlies all, and is to be studied above all?



## INSTRUCTION XII.

### ROSICRUCIANISM AND RELIGION.

AGREEMENT BETWEEN OCCULT AND ACADEMIC SCIENCE, POINTS OF CONTACT, DEVELOPMENT, THE KABBALAH, THE NOBLE EIGHT-FOLD PATH OF BUDDHISM, CONCENTRATION.

---

**No conflict between Academic and Occult Science.**—Between legitimate occult science and academic science there should be no conflict and only such controversy as may lead to closer examinations of the premises of both schools. Especially is this true in regard to Rosicrucian science, and in the preceding Instructions we have endeavored to cite the many instances where the teachings of the Brotherhood are confirmed by the findings and conclusions of academic science.

**Rosicrucianism, the Egyptian Wisdom Teaching.**—The Rosicrucian philosophy, while often termed the “Western Wisdom Religion,” might be more accurately designated as the “Egyptian Wisdom Teaching.” For it is distinctly the cultus of the Egyptian Mysteries in contradistinction to the Hindu school. Rosicrucianism, while defined in Instruction No. 1 as having for its subject Man, is in reality a synthesis of Science, Religion and Philosophy, and furnishes innumerable points of contact between all three. It thus offers a common ground of association for all earnest truth seekers, regardless of previous religious or philosophical and present scientific affiliations.

**Rosicrucianism and Religion are identical in purpose.**—Both seek closer knowledge of God. Religion seeks through faith. Rosicrucianism seeks through the demonstrable and revealed evidences of His power and activity, especially through the study and knowledge of God’s image—Man.

To the truth seeker, regardless of whatever religious associations he may have sustained, Rosicrucianism will give a broader outlook and concept of the revealed evidences of Deity in the natural world.

In the Rosicrucian teachings the popular concepts of Father, Son and Holy Ghost are broadened into a reasonable comprehension of just who these exalted beings really are; their place, time and present status in evolution; their relationships to humanity, and their offices and responsibilities thereto.

**Rosicrucian concept of God.**—God, as popularly conceived by orthodox religion, is seen in the Rosicrucian teachings to be the Architect of our Solar System, not of the Universe, nor yet of the Cosmos, but merely an expression of a vastly greater Trinity. Everywhere in Rosicrucian Science the student finds the expression of the Trinity, Three in One and One expressed in Three.

**The Smaragdine Tablet.**—Father, Son and Holy Ghost form the inseparable triad of the past evolutionary periods of our earth. The three-fold Body, three-fold Spirit and three-fold Soul form the trinitarian composite known as Man. God, the Supreme Being, and finally the Absolute, compose the Trinity of Deific Beings whom the Rosicrucian terms God. Thus "God," as understood by the Rosicrucians, is not simply the Creator of our little Solar System, but the Absolute expressing in threefold manifestation, to which Man conforms in obedience to the Hermetic Law, "as above, so below." This law, although found elsewhere in the Hermetic Writings on which Rosicrucianism is fundamentally based, is also found in amplified form in the Smaragdine Tablet or emerald table found in the tomb of Hermes, a cave near Hebron, discovered, according to Albertus Magnus, by Alexander the Great. The tablet bears thirteen sentences in Phoenician characters, as follow:

1. I speak not fictitious things, but what is true and most certain.
2. What is below is like that which is above, and what is above is like that which is below, to accomplish the miracles of one thing.
3. And as all things were produced by the mediation of one Being, so all things were produced from this one thing by adaptation.
4. Its Father is the Sun, its Mother is the Moon; the Wind carries it in its belly, its Nurse is the Earth.
5. It is the Cause of all Perfection throughout the whole world.
6. Its power is perfect if it be changed into earth.
7. Separate the earth from the Fire, the subtle from the gross, acting prudently and with judgment.

8. Ascend with the greatest sagacity from the earth to heaven, and then again descend to the earth and unite together the powers of things superior and things inferior. Thus you will obtain the glory of the whole world, and all obscurity will fly far away from you.
9. This thing is the fortitude of all fortitude, because it overcomes all subtle things and penetrates every solid thing.
10. Thus were all things created.
11. Thence proceed wonderful adaptations which are produced in this way.
12. Therefore am I called Hermes Trismegistus, possessing the three parts of the philosophy of the whole world.
13. That which I had to say concerning the operation of the Sun is completed.

An exegesis of this tablet belongs to a later volume in this series, dealing exclusively with the Hermetic teachings of the Rosicrucian Order, but the student will see from the lines given the close approximation with the esoteric teachings of all genuine world religions.

**The Kabbalah.**—Neither is Rosicrucianism a form of Kabbalism or the study of the Kabbalah (Quabbalah, Cabala, etc.), exclusively as such. A study of the Kabbalah is included in its general inquiry into the esotericism of religious thought, as revealed by the study of Comparative Religion, but Kabbalism is not made an integral part of the Rosicrucian philosophy. Rosicrucianism originated among the sacerdotal castes of antiquity, and attained its fullest development in the person of "C. R. C.," of whom more will be said in the final Instruction.

Since the Christian era, however, and until early in the present century, exoteric Rosicrucianism has been composed almost exclusively of monastic brethren, many of its Initiates having been Abbots, Bishops, and, it is believed on excellent historical evidence, one a Pope.

The study of the Kabbalah, while not a part of the strict Rosicrucian curriculum, is, however, excellent when taken in connection with a critical exegesis of Hermeticism, and this plan the modern Brotherhood in the Outer follows to a considerable extent.

The Kabbalah is not easy to sum up in outline. The word "Kabbalah" denotes first, "reception," then "received by tradition" and by the ancient Jews was applied to the whole of their religious doctrine with the exception of the Pentateuch, and included the Prophets, the Hagiographa and the oral traditions of the Mishnah.

Kabbalism treats of the nature of Deity, Cosmogony, the Divine Emanations or SEPHIROTH, creation of Angels and Man, their Destiny and Revealed Law. According to the Kabbalah, God is conceived as Boundless Being, above everything, and called En Soph. He is the space of the universe, but the universe is not His space.

**The Non-existent desires to Manifest.**—In this state of boundlessness He cannot be described in words or comprehended by the intellect, and as such He was, in a certain sense, AYIN, the non-existent (Zohar, iii-283). To make His existence manifest En Soph had to become active and creative. This involved intention, desire, thought and work, and as these conditions belong to the finite, En Soph had to become operative through ten Sephiroth or Intelligences emanating from him like rays.

The desire to become manifest, and consequently the desire for an idea of creation, was co-eternal with Deity, and the first emanation or manifestation of the primordial will is called the First Sephirah.

**Order of the Sepiroth.**—This First Sephirah, or substance which existed in Deity from eternity, contained nine other Intelligences or Sephiroth. These again, therefore, emanated one from the other, second from the first, third from the second, continuing in this manner up to ten.

These Ten Sephiroth form among themselves a perfect Unity and represent different aspects of one and the same thing. They are:

1. The Crown,	Kether	6. Beauty,	Tiphereth
2. Wisdom,	Chokmah	7. Firmness,	Netzach
3. Intelligence,	Binah	8. Splendor,	Hod
4. Love,	Chesed	9. Foundation,	Yesod
5. Justice,	Geburah	10. Kingdom,	Malkuth.

Their evolution is thus explained:

“When the Holy Aged, the concealed of all concealed, assumed a form, he produced everything in the form of male and female, as things could not continue in any other form. Hence Wisdom, the second Sephirah and the beginning of development, when it

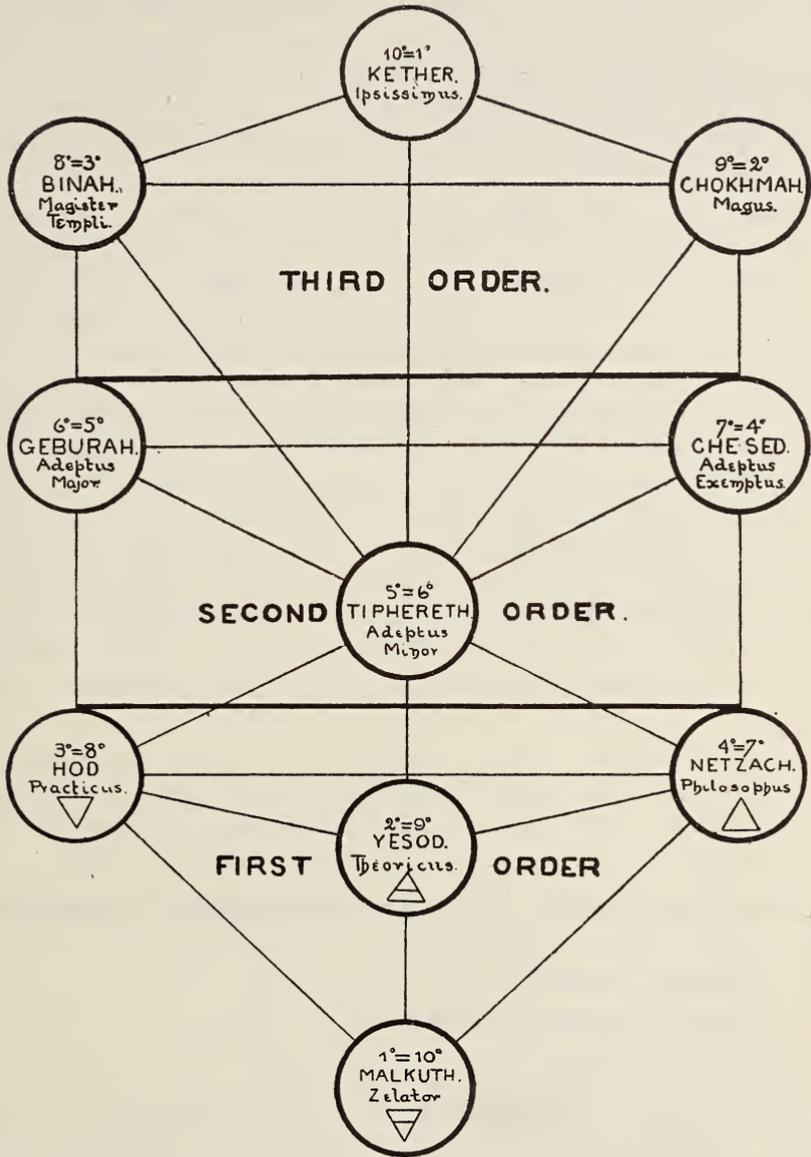


FIG. 80  
THE "SEPHIROTHIC TREE OF LIFE," SHOWING THE SEPHIROTH,  
THE ORDERS AND THE GRADES OF THE PATH.

proceeded from the Holy Aged (i. e., the First Sephirah) emanated in male and female, for Wisdom expanded, and Intelligence, the third Sephirah, proceeded from it, and thus were obtained male and female, viz.: Wisdom the father and Intelligence the mother,

from whose union the other pairs of Sephiroth successively emanated." (Zohar iii-290.) These two opposite potencies, the masculine Wisdom and the feminine Intelligence, Sephiroth Nos. 2 and 3, are joined together by the first potency, the Crown, or Sephirah No. 1; they yield the first triad of the Sephirotic decade, and constitute the divine head of the archetypal man.

**Evolution of the Sephiroth.**—From the junction of Sephiroth Nos. 2 and 3 emanated the masculine potency Love or Mercy (4) and the feminine potency Justice (5), and from the junction of the two latter emanated again the uniting potency Beauty (6). Beauty, the sixth Sephirah, constitutes the chest in the archetypal man and unites Love (4) and Justice (5), which constitute the divine arms, thus yielding the second triad of the Sephiric decade. From this second conjunction emanated again the masculine potency Firmness (7) and the feminine potency Splendor (8), which constitute the divine legs of the archetypal man; and these sent forth Foundation (9), which is the genital organ and medium of union between them, thus yielding the third triad in the Sephirotic decade. Kingdom (10), which emanated from the ninth Sephirah, encircles all the other nine, inasmuch as it is the Schechinah, the divine halo, which encompasses the whole by its all-glorious presence."<sup>1</sup>

**Ezekiel's Vision.**—These ten Sephiroth, termed the World of Emanations, are also called the Primordial, Archetypal or Heavenly Man, and it is this form that is said to have been seen by the Prophet Ezekiel in the mysterious chariot. (Ezek. i, 1-28.)

**The Three Worlds.**—The three triads represent respectively the

- a Intellectual World.
- b Moral or Sensuous World.
- c Material World.

In the Sephirotic or archetypal man, the Sephirah on the right side are masculine and represent Severity. Those on the left are feminine and represent Mercy. The four central Sephiroth represent the principle of Mildness.

**Adam, the Microcosm.**—From the heavenly Adam (i. e., the Sephiroth) was created the earthly Adam, the Microcosm.

This is the merest skeletal digest of the complex and involved philosophy of the Kabbalah, of which both the Sepher Yetzirah and the Sepher Dtzenioutha are treated historically and exegeti-

cally in the regular degrees of the First Grade in the Work of the Brotherhood in America.

**Tetragrammaton.**—Probably the feature of the entire Kabalah that has made the greatest impression on both Jewish and later scholars is the Tetragrammaton, the Hebrew name of Deity, Yod, He, Vau, He, expressed in four letters, IHVH. The true pronunciation is known to but few, and there are at least twenty different mystical pronunciations extant. It is the “secret, sacred, unpronounceable name” to the devout Hebrew. It is capable of twelve transpositions which all convey the meaning of “to be,” and these twelve transpositions are said to correlate with the signs of the Zodiac. They are: IHVH, IHHV, IVHH, HVHI, HVIH, HHIV, VHHI, VIHH, VHIH, HIIHV, HIVH, HHVI. There are also three other tetragrammatic names, AHHI (Existence, Eheieh), ADNI (Adonai, Lord) and AGLA (Aglia), this last a notarikon of the sentence, AThH GBVR LOVLM ADNI, Ateh, Gebor Le-Olahm Adonai; “Thou art mighty forever, O Lord.”<sup>2</sup>

Arcane societies have assumed to find in the Tetragrammaton the so-called “Lost Word,” or “Creative Word.” Its letters embody the human form,



**Abraxas.**—The Sephirotic Emanations call to mind the Greek idea of emanations expressed in the mystic name ABRAXAS. This word or one similar spelled Abrasax has been found engraved on stones called Abraxas Stones, used as amulets and charms by the Basilidean Gnostics. In the Greek notation, the letters make up the number 365, and the Gnostics therefore gave the name to the 365 “Orders” of spirits which, according to their belief, emanated in succession from the Supreme Being. These Orders were supposed to occupy 365 heavens, “each fashioned like, but interior to that above it.” The lowest of these heavens was popularly believed to be the habitat of the spirits who composed the Earth and its inhabitants. Little value, however, attaches to these mystic talismans except as curiosities. Some of the more common specimens have the head of a fowl, arms and bust of a man and the body and tail of a serpent.

**Abacadabra.**—Analogous to the word Abraxas is the magical formula also used by the Gnostics to invoke the aid of beneficent spirit powers against disease and accident. It is often found on the “Abraxas Stones” above mentioned. Precise instructions for its use were given by the Gnostic physician Serenus Sammonicus. To cure fevers and agues the paper on which the word was written was to be folded in the form of a cross, hung from the neck by a linen strip of such length that the paper could rest over the pit of the stomach. It was to be worn nine days and then just before sunrise, was to be cast by the wearer behind him into a stream of running water, flowing easterly. The letters were arranged as follows:

ABRACADABRA ABRACADABR ABRACADAB ABRACADA ABRACAD ABRACA ABRAC ABRA ABR AB A	or	ABRACADABRA BRACADABR RACADAB ACADA CAD A
--	----	--



*La Chausse*

FIG. S1

A GNOSTIC “ABRAXAS” GEM.

While the study of Kabbalism and Gnosticism is not only interesting, but affords a deep insight into the esotericism of the ancient sacred writings and discovers the basis of many mediaeval and modern concepts regarding cosmogony, the Rosicrucian finds of more practical value in assistance toward living the definite life, without which true spiritual progress is impossible, the

teachings of Buddha; not the modern Theosophical interpretations, but his original utterances.

**What Buddha enjoined.**—First of all, in full agreement with the Charge given to every Neophyte in the Rosicrucian Order, Buddha taught that we must not believe a thing merely because it has been said, nor in traditions merely because they have been handed down from antiquity, nor rumors as such, nor writings by



FIG. 82

THE MANDALAY BUDDHA, 2400 YEARS OLD. CAST IN TIME OF BUDDHA HIMSELF WHO WAS SUPPOSED TO HAVE BREATHED HIMSELF INTO THE IMAGE.

(Copyright.)

sages, merely because sages wrote them, nor in fancies that we may suspect to have been inspired; nor from inferences drawn from some haphazard assumption we may have made; nor because of what seems an analogical necessity; nor on the mere authority of our own teachers or masters. We should believe only when our own reason and inner consciousness corroborates the writing, doctrine or saying.

**Meaning of the term Buddha.**—The word Buddha means the “Enlightened,” or one who has attained the perfect wisdom. While

Gautama Siddartha is known as the greatest, there have been many Buddhas. According to the old teaching, a Buddha is one who becomes so imbued with the desire and determination to be such, that he begins at once to live the life that results eventually in his return to earth in a later incarnation fitted to guide humanity in some cycle adapted for special spiritual revelation and manifestation.

**How Buddhahood is attained.**—Those who determine upon the attainment of Buddhahood strive not only throughout the life expression in which their determination is made but also throughout all succeeding incarnations to subdue every passion, gain wisdom from experience and develop the higher faculties. Such a one thus grows wiser, nobler in character and stronger in virtue birth after birth, until he finally reaches the stage when he can become the “Perfected,” Enlightened, All-wise, The Teacher.

**Ignorance.**—Buddhism teaches that ignorance causes most suffering because it makes us prize that which is not worth prizing, grieve for that which should not call forth grief, esteem as real the unreal and illusionary and thus waste our lives in the pursuit of unworthy purposes and objects.

**What is most valuable.**—Correspondingly, that which is most valuable to humanity is to learn the secret of man’s existence and destiny, and to be able to estimate life and its relations at their true value. Thus may we not only attain the greatest happiness but avoid causing all possible suffering to our fellow-men.

**The Four Noble Truths.**—Our ignorance may be dispelled by the knowledge of the “FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS.” These are:

1. “The miseries of evolutionary existence resulting in births and deaths, life after life.
2. The cause, productive of misery, which is the selfish desire, ever renewed, of satisfying one’s self, without being able ever to secure that end.
3. The destruction of that desire, or the estranging of one’s self from it.
4. The means of obtaining this destruction of desire.<sup>3</sup>

**The Noble Eight-Fold Path.**—The conquest over self and desire is to be accomplished through the Noble Eight-fold Path, the eight parts of which are called “angas.” They are:

1. Right Belief (as to the Law of Causation, or Karma).
2. Right Thought.
3. Right Speech.
4. Right Action.
5. Right Means of Livelihood.
6. Right Exertion.
7. Right Remembrance and Self Discipline.
8. Right Concentration of Thought.

**Salvation means Emancipation.**—"The man who keeps these angas in mind and follows them will be free from sorrow and ultimately reach salvation, which in this case means emancipation."<sup>4</sup>

**Buddha's summary.**—Buddha summed up his whole doctrine in one gatha or verse:

Sabba papassa akaranam  
Kusalassa upasampada  
Sachitta pariyo dapanam—  
Etam Buddhanusasanam.

"To cease from all evil actions,  
To generate all that is good,  
To cleanse one's mind;  
This is the constant advice of the Buddhas."<sup>5</sup>

**Synonymous with Rosicrucian teachings.**—These teachings of Buddha as just cited are the clearest possible statement of the teachings of the Rosicrucian Brotherhood. Rosicrucianism teaches that the greatest value to humanity lies in the secret of man's existence and destiny; it seeks to shorten involuntary incarnations by knowledge; it teaches that this process can be effected only through Right Thought, Right Action, Right Feeling and Right Living, exactly in complete accord with the precepts of the Noble Eight-Fold Path. And Rosicrucianism agrees absolutely with Buddha's own summary of his doctrine.

**Buddhism and Rosicrucianism BOTH teach positivity.**—Further than this, Buddhism and Rosicrucianism parallel each other in their admonitions to cultivate POSITIVITY, NOT NEGATIVITY. "To cease from sin" may be desirable, but it is passivity. But "to get virtue" is a POSITIVE ACTION, and Buddha taught that we should not merely be not evil, but that we should be POSITIVELY good.<sup>6</sup>

**The Five Observances.**—Upon the Buddhist laity are enjoined the FIVE OBSERVANCES or universal precepts, which all faithful Buddhists repeat publicly at the Viharas.

1. I observe the precept to refrain from destroying the life of beings.
2. I observe the precept to refrain from stealing.
3. I observe the precept to refrain from *unlawful* sexual intercourse.
4. I observe the precept to refrain from falsehood.
5. I observe the precept to abstain from using intoxicants.<sup>7</sup>

**Karma inescapable.**—The close analogy between the Five Observances and the Ten Commandments of Mosaic Law is obvious. Rosicrucianism and Buddhism are again at one in their insistence that every man receives under the operations of unerring Karma “exactly that reward or punishment which he has deserved, no more, no less. No good deed or bad deed, however trifling and however secretly committed, escapes the evenly balanced scales of Karma, which is a causation operating on the moral as well as on the physical and other planes. Buddhists say there is no miracle in human affairs; what a man sows, that must and will he reap.”<sup>8</sup>

**Meditation.**—Rosicrucianism teaches with Buddhism the value of meditation as the process by which one extinguishes passion and attains knowledge. Meditation has two broad general divisions:

Samatha, The attenuation of passion by leading the holy life and by continued effort to subdue the senses.

Vidarsama, The attainment of supernormal wisdom by reflection; each of these divisions embraces twenty aspects.

**Four other paths.**—The practice of meditation and the precepts and observances lead to four other paths:

1. Sotapatti, The beginning or entering into which follows after one’s clear perception of the Four Noble Truths.
2. Sakardagami, The path of one who has subjugated lust, hatred and the delusion that he need only return once to this world.
3. Anagami, The path of those who have so far conquered self that they need not return to this world.
4. Arhat, The path of him who is free from the necessity of re-incarnation and has capacitated himself to enjoy perfect wisdom, boundless pity for the ignorant and suffering and measureless love for all beings.

**Personal Transmutation.**—With all these teachings Rosicrucianism is in thorough accord, and regards the active prosecution of these developmental processes, moral and ethical, as actually producing PHYSICAL results as well, for it is impossible to raise

the vibrational tone or status of the spiritual self without correspondingly raising the vibrational status of the physical body as well. This complete process the Rosicrucian terms personal **TRANSMUTATION**.

**Another point of contact.**—And even here, the close relationship or point of contact between Rosicrucianism and true Buddhism continues, for against the Rosicrucian concept of Cosmic Root Substance Buddhism places the doctrine, "All things are made of one essence (Swabhava), yet things are different according to the forms which they assume under different impressions."

**Sakya Muni and Meditation.**—Sakya Muni (Buddha) taught that Right Meditation leads to spiritual enlightenment, or the Buddha-like faculty that is inherent in every man, and Rosicrucianism asserts that to whoso is willing to "live the life," the strenuous striving for self-control of all physical and mental conditions that enthrall mankind to materialism, will come spiritual enlightenment regardless of school.

**Rosicrucianism agrees with all religious fundamentals.**—With the fundamentals of all world religions Rosicrucianism is a Unity. This does not mean that it endorses all the foibles of so-called "Churchianity." With the man-made doctrines of salvation, redemption, justification, etc., it has naught to do. There is a real salvation and redemption and they have been explained in the foregoing Instructions, but with the inventions of an inconstant theology that is obliged to change to meet the progressional development of the human mind and the advancement of science Rosicrucianism has no common ground.

**Theological Salvation and Redemption untenable.**—Theological salvation is untenable, for no human soul could be eternally lost even if it desired to be. Salvation being untenable, redemption belongs to the same category. Humanity exists in and of the Being of its great Parent, the Absolute, and no part of the ALL can ever possibly be lost. All is in the ALL, and the ALL is in All.

**There is a true Science of the Soul.**—Yet with the Church, as she was before Oecumenical Councils, wrought havoc with human freedom of thought and before the personal ambitions of human leaders fettered her progress in her divine mission, the Brotherhood has much in common. Rosicrucianism teaches that there is a true science of the soul just as there is a true science of the body, and there is a well defined method of guiding and correcting soul growth, just as there is a corresponding method of guiding and checking bodily growth.

**Rosicrucianism and the Sacraments.**—In this process of soul growth Rosicrucianism asserts the importance of the Seven Sacraments of Holy Church as definite channels through which spiritual power may enter into, nourish, sustain and develop the growing soul of the aspirant.

**Thirty-three Sacraments.**—This is true to such an extent that not only is soul growth taught in the Degrees of the Exoteric and Esoteric side of the Order, but the benefit of the Sacramental System is also offered through the established Holy Orders of the purely religious side of the Brotherhood in the Outer as well. For the Rosicrucian System, recognizing the true value of Sacraments as external, outward visible manifestations of inward spiritual grace, has a well defined code of Thirty-three Sacraments, similar to those of the Greek Occult Church.

**Psychology a misnomer.**—At the present time, although university chairs are endowed for the purpose of teaching it, there is no real Psychology.

The proof of this statement is seen in the meaning of the term itself. "Psychology" means "Soul knowledge or Soul Wisdom." So-called psychology deals with everything BUT the soul. It treats speculatively with the "Me," the "I," the Consciousness, the Senses, Reflexes, the Mentality, etc., but it lets the soul severely alone, and it is well that it does, for the time is not yet when the soul and its spiritual associations and relations has become a matter of authoritative text-book study. Spiritual things are to be discerned only in ONE way—SPIRITUALLY, and to discern them means a long period of spiritual development.

**Brotherhood publishes no formulas for development.**—While many books purport to offer unfailing methods for personal spiritual development, none have ever been authoritatively set forth by the Rosicrucian Brotherhood, for the simple reason that it would be impossible to do so. Every human being's development is a strictly personal problem and must be guided by as careful diagnosis as a physician would make for physical treatment. Failure to recognize this is why so many become mentally deranged in trying to follow general advices published in easily procured volumes.

**Given only in the Secret Work.**—In the Secret Work of the Brotherhood as conducted in America, personal development is made a personal study. The work, practice and study of each aspirant is carefully mapped out and daily record charts of progress prepared and preserved. It is well known that in medical

work what is one person's salvation may be another person's death and prescriptions are not transferable. So it is in spiritual development.

Aside from the general rules for right living, thinking and acting, when it comes to specific developmental work the temperament, mental characteristics, personal traits, weaknesses as well as strength, ambitions fulfilled or unfulfilled, must be carefully studied by a competent Teacher. No all-inclusive formulas for development can be given out. Each case must be individual.

**Brotherhood open to all.**—The doors of the Brotherhood are open wide to all who knock, on the following basis of association, expressed in the form of definite affirmations:

**The Affirmations.**—We affirm:

1. The existence of One Infinite Intelligence, Omnific, Omniscient and Omnipotent in its functions, from which we emanated as unconscious spirit substance and to which we return as conscious, individualized entities.
2. The Incarnation of the Spirit in visible form or Matter, to be for the the purpose of Experience.
3. That all Life is continuous, without Beginning and without Ending; Evolutional, in a constantly ascending scale of Progression.
4. That the Mortal may attain to the Knowledge of the Spiritual while yet Incarnate.
5. The Truth of Re-incarnation as a factor in the Soul's Evolutionary Progress, necessary as many times as may be required for the Assimilation of the Requisite Experience.

In the personal guidance of the Order, directions are given for Concentration, Meditation, Contemplation, Prayer, Dietetics, Exercise, Rest, Vitality, Healing and finally Spiritual Insight and LIBERATION.

**Hypnotism forbidden.**—The cultivation, study or practice of hypnotism is especially prohibited to Fraters of the Brotherhood, either as a means of entertainment, healing, or an avenue to possible clairvoyance. While the academic study of hypnotism is useful to the student, the study of this power for personal practice is in strict opposition to the teachings of the Order. In every case of hypnotic control the operator projects a definite portion of his etheric vehicle into that of his subject (or victim) and there IT REMAINS. This results in a union of karmic conditions, prevents the subject from future supreme control and exercise of his free-

will and does incalculable harm to the progress of both Egos. It harms him who operates and him who is operated upon. In medical practice anaesthetics, suggestive therapy and psycho-analysis will almost invariably accomplish the results sought otherwise by hypnotism.

**Mediumship not allowed.**—Neither is the cultivation or practice of so-called mediumship permissible, for the teachings of the Rosicrucian Brotherhood are directed toward the development of POSITIVE, INDEPENDENT SPIRITUAL INSIGHT, the full, free and complete exercise of the spiritual faculties independently of any form of psychic “control” or obsession: This latter is just as harmful to the subject or involuntary medium or psychic as hypnotic control, and is, in a way, almost identical with it, the hypnotic operator in this case being the unseen spirit or entity of whom the subject has no more knowledge than he would have of a stranger on the street. One certainly would not bid a total stranger into his drawing room, unannounced, or without proper credentials, neither should he permit his mental sanctorum to be invaded by still more subtle, elusive, insidious and sometimes malignant entities from the invisible worlds, for dead men are not always good men; in fact a dead man so-called is often for a time not quite as efficient as a living man.

**Earth-bound astrals not desirable associates.**—Our Earth region is too close to the lower astrals to make it prudent for a sensitive individual to submit to the contact with earth-bound entities, and many a time the involuntary medium entertains spiritually those whom he would abhor in physical life. Obsessions of a malignant character threaten those who defy this principle and ignore the warnings of those who may be in a position to know.

**Some development possible to all.**—It is possible and in full accord with natural, constructive laws, for EVERY individual to develop SOME degree of spiritual sensitivity and insight if they are willing to keep at it persistently and unflinching long enough. But real development means a complete transmutation of the physical structure as well as the spiritual vehicles and it is not accomplished quickly nor without effort and endurance.

In this quest, the victor is he who persists faithfully to the end, and to such come the reward of knowing at first hand the verities of the life unseen.

**Rosicrucians and “The Philosopher’s Stone.”**—Rosicrucians are accused of being a credulous sect devoted to the chimera of seek-

ing a stone that will "raise" baser metals to higher ones. This is called "seeking the PHILOSOPHER'S STONE." The Rosicrucians are quite content to let such critics remain in full enjoyment of the satisfaction that may come to them from having proffered their opinions. Such criticism also comes from the peevishness of the disappointed ones who are unable to make progress toward the discovery of the true Stone themselves, and then vent their disappointment on those who "refuse to give them the formula."

**Spiritual Science comes first.**—The search for the Philosopher's Stone is one which has engaged the minds of a considerable number of the world's most brilliant thinkers throughout many ages. It is a search resulting from a true inner knowledge of basic facts and fundamental laws OF SPIRITUAL SCIENCE *FIRST*, and Material Science secondarily.

**The Philosopher's Stone a FACT, not a theory.**—The Philosopher's Stone is a FACT, not a theory, and some have proven it to their entire satisfaction and the good of humanity, but those who have succeeded have also entered into the full recognition and acceptance of the law that makes its comprehension a matter of personal attainment. Nevertheless, those who have attained are under another law which compels them to aid all legitimate efforts on the part of sincere seekers following after them.

**Seek first the Kingdom of God.**—The bibliography of Alchemy and Hermeticism is replete with apparently meaningless phraseology, intended to conceal rather than to reveal, yet perfectly understood by those who seek first the spiritual insight. The search for the Philosopher's Stone is the obedience to the spiritual admonition, "SEEK YE FIRST THE KINGDOM OF GOD, AND ALL THESE THINGS SHALL BE ADDED UNTO YOU."

**Charge to Neophytes.**—Every Rosicrucian Neophyte will remember these words, "Therefore, in your inquiries and reachings into the deep mysteries of Nature, learn first to know WHAT THINGS YOU HAVE WITHIN YOURSELF BEFORE YOU SEEK INTO FOREIGN MATTERS WITHOUT THEM, AND BY THE DIVINE POWER WITHIN YOU, FIRST HEAL YOUR OWN SELF AND TRANSMUTE YOUR OWN SOUL, THAT YOU MAY GO ON PROSPEROUSLY AND SEEK WITH GOOD SUCCESS THE MYSTERIES AND WONDERS OF GOD IN ALL NATURAL THINGS." And again:

"I admonish thee therefore that desirest to delve into the innermost parts of Nature, if that which thou seekest thou findest not within thyself, thou wilt never find it without thee."

**What Our Father Hermes saith.**—Our Father Hermes, in his Golden Treatise concerning the Physical Secret of the Philosopher's Stone, saith: "Through long years I have not ceased to experiment, neither have I spared any labor of mind; and this science and art I have obtained BY THE INSPIRATION OF THE LIVING GOD ALONE, WHO JUDGED FIT TO OPEN THEM TO ME, HIS SERVANT. To those enabled by reason to judge of truth He has given power to arbitrate, but to NONE OCCASION OF DELINQUENCY.

"For myself, I had never discovered this matter to any one, had it not been from fear of the day of judgment, and the perdition of my soul if I concealed it. IT IS A DEBT WHICH I AM DESIROUS TO DISCHARGE TO THE FAITHFUL, AS THE AUTHOR OF OUR FAITH DID DEIGN TO BESTOW IT UPON ME.

"Understand ye then, O sons of Wisdom, that the knowledge of the four elements of the ancient philosophers was not corporally or imprudently sought after, WHICH ARE THROUGH PATIENCE TO BE DISCOVERED ACCORDING TO THEIR CAUSES AND THE OCCULT OPERATION. For their operation is occult, since nothing is done except it be compounded and because it is not perfected unless the colors be thoroughly passed and accomplished."<sup>10</sup>

**Not corporally but spiritually.**—This gives a clue to the proper comprehension of the elements, but not as they are commonly understood; non corporaliter, it must be understood, sed spiritualiter et sapienter, not corporally but spiritually and wisely. The properties and attributes of Universal Spirit are abstrusely included in all existence and are to be understood only by its own intimate analysis and introverted light.<sup>11</sup>

**The Innermost Chamber of Life.**—"Our Mercury," says the wise Scholiast, "is philosophic, fiery, vital, running, which may be mixed with other metals and again separated from them. It is prepared in the INNERMOST CHAMBER OF LIFE, AND THERE IT MAY BE COAGULATED, AND WHERE METALS GROW THERE THEY MAY BE FOUND, EVEN IN THE ULTIMATE AXLE OF EACH CREATED LIFE."<sup>12</sup>

"This most precious Stone, are we at length to conclude then, is *Light* essentialized artificially in its proper substance, and exalted by fermentation into an immutable magnet, able to draw and convert the radical homogeneity of Nature into its own assimilative accord?"<sup>13</sup>

**Testimony of Scripture.**—Can the Philosopher's Stone be attained? Hear what Holy Scripture saith:

“To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the Tree of Life, which is in the midst of the Paradise of God.

“To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden Manna, and will give him a White Stone, and in the Stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.

“And he that overcometh and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations; and he shall rule them with a rod of iron; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken in shivers even as I received from my Father. And I will give him **THE MORNING STAR**.

“He that overcometh the same shall be clothed in White Raiment. And I will not blot out his name out of the Book of Life. Behold, I come quickly; hold fast that which thou hast that no man take thy **CROWN**.

“Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the Temple of my God, and he shall no more go out; and I will write upon him the name of my God—and the name of the city of my God, which is New Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God; and I will write upon him my new name.

“Behold, I stand at the door and knock, and if any man hear my voice and open the door I will come in with him, and sup with him, and he with me.

“And to him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me in my throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with my father in his throne.

“They, then, who have been fortunate enough to perfect this work, having received so much grace from the Father of Lights as to obtain this inestimable gift of Wisdom Divine, what more on earth should they desire, but that it may always be applied aright in obedience to the Divine Will, for the benefaction of mankind and vindication of true virtue?”<sup>14</sup>

**Rosicrucianism is Progressive.**—Rosicrucianism is at once a progressive science, a progressive philosophy and a progressive religion. Orthodox religion is content to accept the Bible more or less literally. Thus it begins with a materialistic traditional account of the first man, Adam, and ends with Revelation, the greatest revelation of which is the astounding seeming fact that out of all the billions of human beings who have peopled this planet, only 144,000 are to be saved.

**The 144,000 explained.**—As a matter of fact this statement means that ALL HUMANITY IS to be saved. The esoteric truth is revealed by the significance of the numerical valuations of letters. Occult students see nine distinct layers in the Earth's crust as differentiated from the many classifications of academic geology. There are nine Initiations, Nine is the number of our evolutionary status. The ancient Hebrews had no numerals, but each of their letters had a numerical valuation. Therefore in reading Hebrew it is equally important to understand the numerical valuations that may be concealed. Adam is written ADM. The numerical valuations of the letters are, A—1, D—4, M—40. Theosophically written and added gives,  $1+4+4+0=9$ .

**Number of the Beast.**—In Revelation we find the number of the "Beast" given as 666. Theosophically written and added gives  $6+6+6=18$ , and  $1+8=9$ . Adam and the Beast each are synonymous with Humanity as a whole. The "Number of the Beast" therefore signifies Humanity, the materialism of which acts to retard its progress and is its own greatest and arch enemy 144,000 theosophically written and added gives  $1+4+4+0+0+0=9$ . Here we have the same number again. Thus if 9 is the number of Humanity and 9 is the number to be saved, it means no more or less than ALL humanity is to be saved, which is the teaching of the Rosicrucians.

**Only ceremonies of proven value retained.**—While the earlier spiritual scientists utilized pentacles and other geometrical forms and formulas as means of concentration, just as the modern clergy use antiquated and sometimes now meaningless ceremonial forms as religious mantras and stimuli, the modern Rosicrucians preserve in their ceremonial work only such forms as have been proven to have distinct occult values and practical merit, in ensuring uniformity of thought, action and intent during their Convocations. This is one point of departure from orthodoxy and standard ecclesiasticism. True spiritual science and academic science progress and take note of the progressional development of the human mind. The Church seems unfortunately to be content with the supernaturalism of nearly two thousand years of propaganda and expects the advanced mind of today to be content with the miracle worship of nineteen centuries past.

**Outward acceptance.**—This means that in many cases the pews are in advance of the chancels, for many regular adherents of orthodox church attendance secretly maintain their own private

personal views and concepts often widely at variance with the teachings of the "Church of their Fathers," while rendering as "in good form" outward complaisance with the Church as a still desirable social and moral institution. This means a general weakening of the religious fibre of modern life as is evidenced in the moral laxity of the times in many ways.

Right up to the present moment, almost, science has been relying on the expensive, often complicate apparatus used in the application of the Roentgen Rays or "X Rays" for medical examination. Yet we have now discovered that with a simple electric light properly enclosed, excellent shadowgraphs can be taken of the skeletal framework, in some cases better than with the former elaborate apparatus.<sup>15</sup>

So it is with our spiritual natures and soul growth. It is found that the elimination of old, obscure ceremonial, the true meaning of which is lost and perhaps outgrown, leaves the field clear for the application direct of the simpler and more easily applied factors of introspection, concentration, and the more rapid development of true spiritual insight; for this is a truly psychic age in spite of its apparent materialism, and the child of today knows more about the inner, subtler, properties of the human vehicle than his parents when of similar age.

**The World Soul.**—In this very fact, the Rosicrucian sees an important development, none other than that of the "World Soul." Just as the Three-fold Spirit reacts upon the Three-fold Body, extracting therefrom the Essence known as the Three-fold Soul, so the Great Christos or Sun Spirit indrawn into its Physical Vehicle, the Earth, is extracting therefrom the Planetary Soular Body, the gradual development of which is enlightening and illuminating all the Children of this World; for as it is written (Luke xvi, 8), "The children of this world are wiser in their generation than the children of light," meaning the earlier generations of humanity, who, while closer to spiritual conditions and relationships than are the present, yet had not developed the individual intelligence to the same degree.

**Ignorance the greatest sin.**—Ignorance may be called the greatest sin. And this is "the sin against the Holy Ghost" which will not be forgiven in this world nor in the world to come (Matt. xii, 31). Holy, i. e., sacred or Divine, and Ghost (Sax. Gust), signify to the Rosicrucian the Divine Breath or Intelligence breathed into the earliest forms of primordial life by the Divine Intelligence, developing, assimilating, guiding and unfolding

through all the developmental forms of evolving life up to man's present supreme status in the evolutionary scale. To blaspheme this Holy Guardian Angel or Divine Inner Self by the blindness of ignorance or the failure to realize that our physical senses are but the avenues through which we contact exterior conditions, and to suborn our inner guidance to the fallibility of sense perception, ignoring reason and succumbing to the lure of sensualism, is the true "sin against the Holy Ghost."

**Od Force; Electricity an Entity.**—This Divine Breath will sometime be found to be vastly more than a mere phenomenon of occult science. At present it is used more often in a metaphorical sense with little realization of its true importance. Nevertheless, the Divine Breath in Rosicrucian science is the "Primordial Electric Entity," for Rosicrucianism teaches that Electricity IS an Entity and "electrifies into life and separates primordial stuff (Cosmic Root Substance) or pregenetic matter into atoms, themselves the source of all life and consciousness. There exists a universal AGENT UNIQUE of all forms and of life, that is called Od, Ob and Aour, active and passive, positive and negative, like day and night; it is the *first light in Creation* (Eliphas Levi)—the 'first light' of the primordial Elohim, the Adam, 'male and female,' or (scientifically) Electricity and Life."<sup>16</sup>

"Od is the pure life-giving Light, or magnetic fluid; Ob the messenger of death used by sorcerers, the nefarious evil fluid; Aour is the synthesis of the two, Astral Light proper."<sup>17</sup>

Orthodox religion begins with the traditional account of a mythical personage. Rosicrucianism begins its study of man, aside from primordial cosmological processes, with the actual scale of his evolutionary progress. Agassiz gives the following generalization which the Rosicrucian student closely follows:

**Agassiz Table.—**

Radiata,	a	Polyps, Marine organisms, corals.
	b	Acalephs.
	c	Star-fish, Sea Urchins, etc.
Mollusca,	d	Acephala (Oysters and shell fish).
	e	Gasteropods (Snails).
	f	Cephalopods.
Articulata,	g	Worms.
	h	Crustacea (Lobsters, etc.).
	i	Insecta.

- Vertebrata, j Fishes.
- k Reptiles.
- l Birds.
- m Mammals (including man).<sup>18</sup>

**Resume of States of Consciousness.**—Heindel gives an excellent summary of the states of consciousness through which the evolving life forms have passed, correlated with the proper Periods:

Period.	Corresponding consciousness.
Saturn,	Unconsciousness corresponding to deep trance.
Sun,	Unconsciousness resembling dreamless sleep.
Moon,	Picture consciousness, corresponding to dream state.
Earth,	Waking, objective consciousness.
Jupiter,	Self-conscious picture consciousness.
Venus,	Objective, Self-conscious, Creative consciousness.
Vulcan,	Highest Spiritual Consciousness. <sup>19</sup>

The religious side of Rosicrucianism may be summed up in this, "To know God, by knowing his image, Man." To Live right, Think right, Act right and to seek at-one-ment with the Great Spirit which works in all and through all.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 12

1. Should any conflict exist between Rosicrucian and academic science?
2. What is the Rosicrucian Philosophy accurately said to be?
3. In what way are Rosicrucianism and Religion identical?
4. What is the Rosicrucian concept of God?
5. What is the Smaragdine Tablet said to be?
6. Is Rosicrucianism the same as Kabbalism?
7. What relation does Rosicrucianism bear to monasticism?
8. What is the Kabbalah?
9. Of what does it treat?
10. How is God conceived of by the Kabbalah?
11. What does the "Non-Existent" desire?
12. What did the First Sefhira contain?

13. What do the Ten Sephiroth form among themselves?
14. How is their evolution explained?
15. Describe the bodily parts of the Archetypal Man.
16. What was Ezekiel's Vision?
17. What are the Three Worlds of the Kabbalah?
18. Who was Adam?
19. What is the Tetragrammaton?
20. Give the twelve transpositions of the characters.
21. Are there any other tetragrammatic names?
22. What have some societies assumed to find in the Tetragrammaton?
23. What did Buddha enjoin?
24. What is the meaning of the word "Buddha"?
25. Have there been more than one Buddha?
26. Which was the greatest of all Buddhas?
27. How is Buddhahood attained?
28. What did Buddha teach regarding ignorance?
29. What is most valuable to humanity?
30. What are the Four Noble Truths?
31. What is the Noble Eight-fold Path?
32. What does "Salvation" mean?
33. How did Buddha summarize his teachings?
34. With what are the teachings synonymous?
35. What do both Buddhism and Rosicrucianism teach?
36. What are the Five Observances?
37. What do both Rosicrucianism and Buddhism teach regarding Karma?
38. What is said of the value of meditation?
39. Name four other paths.
40. What is the process of personal transmutation?
41. Give another point of contact between Rosicrucianism and Buddhism.

42. What did Sakya Muni teach regarding Meditation?
43. With what is Rosicrucianism in unity?
44. Are the theological doctrines of salvation and redemption tenable?
45. Is there such a thing as true science of the soul?
46. What is the attitude of Rosicrucianism towards the Sacraments?
47. How many Sacraments are noted in the Rosicrucian ecclesiastical system?
48. What is said of psychology as now taught?
49. Does the Brotherhood publish formulas for personal development?
50. Why not?
51. How is such instruction given?
52. Is the Brotherhood open to all?
53. Give the Five Affirmations.
54. What does the Brotherhood teach regarding hypnotism?
55. Is mediumship allowed?
56. What is said of Earth-bound spirits?
57. Is personal development possible to all?
58. What is the Philosopher's Stone?
59. What comes first, in its search?
60. Is the Philosopher's Stone a fact?
61. What should be sought first?
62. Where should the Stone be sought?
63. What does our Father Hermes say concerning it?
64. How should the Elements be properly comprehended?
65. Where should our Mercury be prepared?
66. What is the testimony of Scripture?
67. Is Rosicrucianism static or progressive?
68. What is the significance of the 144,000 ultimately to be saved?

69. What is the "Number of the Beast"?
70. Does Rosicrucianism perpetuate useless ceremonies and formulas?
71. How are the X-Rays used as an illustration of soul growth and development?
72. What is the "World-soul"?
73. What is the greatest of all sins?
74. What constitutes "sin against the Holy Ghost"?
75. What is OD Force?
76. With what does orthodox religion begin?
77. With what does Rosicrucianism begin?
78. Give the Table of Agassiz.
79. Give a resume of the States of Consciousness.
80. Sum up the religious phase of Rosicrucianism.



## INSTRUCTION XIII.

### THE HUMAN TEMPLE.

ROSICRUCIANISM AND FREEMASONRY. SUMMARY OF THE TEACHINGS OF BOTH FRATERNITIES AS APPLIED TO MAN. BIBLICAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL ANALOGIES. THE TEMPLE OF SOLOMON.

---

**Not a Matter of Controversy.**—It is not our purpose in these Instructions to discuss Masonic points of controversy. It is the teaching of the Brotherhood that Freemasonry owes its real origin to the Rosicrucians, a teaching based upon excellent historical and traditional evidence and supported by many well known Masonic historians and researchers.

**Origin of Freemasonry.**—Many enthusiastic Masons attempt to ascribe the origin of Freemasonry to an antiquity contemporary with the times of Noah and Enoch. Others assert that the Fraternity first assumed definite form and shape in 1717. With these controversies we have naught to do. We believe that Masonry is of an origin far more remote than many of its members realize, but also that such origin existed in the arcane schools, principally Rosicrucian, of great antiquity. This is well set forth in the excellent paper entitled "The Alleged Rosicrucian Origin of Freemasonry," published in "Masonic Notes," Kingston, Ont., 1919.

**Rosicrucian teachings applied to the Human Temple.**—As the larger percentage of membership of the Societas Rosicruciana In America is composed of Masons, many of whom are eminent in the Craft, the following Instruction is published as a summary of the combined Rosicrucian and Masonic teachings concerning the Temple, and showing how the esoteric teachings of Rosicrucianism explain and amplify the symbolism of Masonry and do actually demonstrate the practical application of occult principles to the physical structure of the homo.

**Where this Instruction was first given.**—This Instruction was read as a monograph before Metropolitan Lodge No. 1, Ark Mariner Masons, New York City, in 1918, and is printed complete

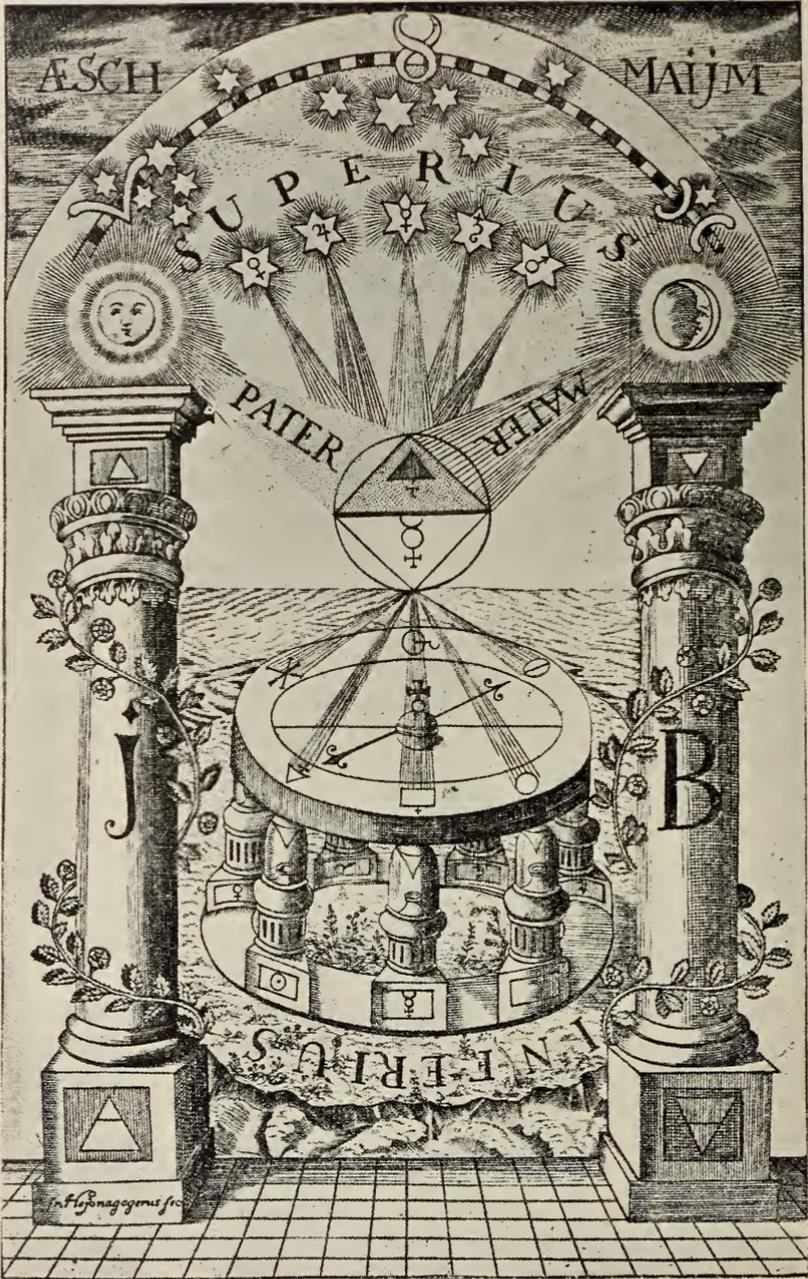


FIG. 83

ROSE CROSS TABLET WITH THE UNITED SYMBOLS OF ALCHEMY AND MASONRY, AN EVIDENCE OF THE PRIOR ORIGIN OF THE ROSICRUCIAN ORDER. (*Compass der Weisen par Ketzmia Veve Baron Proeck*), BERLIN AND LEIPZIG, 1779, PAGE 112. (From *Les Illumine de Baviere et la Franc-Maçonnerie allemande*)

as read. No Masonic Obligations have been violated by this procedure and it is hoped that this Instruction will be studied most carefully by all Masons to whom it may come, whether they are members of the Rosicrucian Fraternity or not.

**How Degrees should be used.**—Neither Rosicrucian or Masonic degrees are stepping stones to social or commercial preferment, and any member of either Fraternity who so uses them violates the principles of both Orders. The purpose of each great Brotherhood is to give Light and More Light to those who seek, and by their principles and teachings to illumine the Path which to so many is obscure.

**Assumed Egyptian origins of each Fraternity.**—Incidentally, the researches of students in both Fraternities who ascribe Egyptian origin to each Order is but added proof of the premise that Freemasonry originated in Rosicrucianism, inasmuch as in Egypt the esoteric preceded the exoteric, and Rosicrucianism is essentially esoteric, while Masonry is although symbolic, essentially exoteric.

**The House not made with hands.**—In nearly every Degree of Freemasonry are found allusions to a "House not made with hands, eternal in the Heavens." In the same Degrees the Candidates are presented with "Working Tools" of artisan crafts, which they are taught to employ for the more noble and glorious purpose of preparing their minds as living stones, adapted for the Master's use, in the construction of the spiritual Temple, "not made with hands."

**Identity of the Temple.**—This is surely a lofty ideal to place before the newly made initiate of the Fraternity, but it would perhaps be productive of results more satisfactory to the Craft and certainly more profitable to the Craftsman if each were instructed more definitely as to the nature and actual identity of the Temple to which such frequent allusion is made.

**When the Esoteric Truth was "Lost."**—Like the Christian Church, however, Masonry, as the Custos of the Lesser Mysteries, long since bartered its privilege of teaching the great truths profoundly concealed in the mystic and esoteric interpretation of its ceremonial, just as the Church exchanged the Divine Power of Thaumaturgy for political favor and prestige.

**Fable of the Material Temple.**—As long as Freemasonry continues to teach as truth the fable of the material magnificence of the Temple reputed to have been built by Solomon, just so long

will its initiates remain the blind children of a blind mother. If we accuse the Church of being a stumbling block in the pathway of advancing science and philosophy, what shall we say of an ethical organization of world wide extent, embracing in its membership notable scientists and archaeologists, yet stubbornly clinging to a worn-out and altogether untenable tradition, which at best it certainly fails completely to understand or interpret at the present day.

We are informed that "after David had been gathered to his fathers, and the last honors paid to his memory, Solomon wielded the sceptre of Israel, peace reigned within his borders and the Children of Israel looked forward with peculiar satisfaction for the display of that wisdom which was destined to astonish and amaze the world."

**Size of the Temple.**—Most assuredly, the wisdom referred to HAS astonished and amazed the world. Reflect, brethren, 80,000 workmen labored unceasingly, under the aid and guidance of three powerful Kings, with armies of assistants and laborers at their disposal, for more than seven years, to produce a little building 108 ft. 5 inches long, 36 ft. 5 inches wide and 54 ft. high. And so spacious was it and magnificent withal, and constructed by so many celebrated architects, that although the rough dwellings of American troglodytes and the cave dwellings of Homo Sapiens of 50,000 years ago, together with the Pyramids and other imposing monuments of antiquity still survive in excellent preservation, we are ingenuously informed that the spacious and magnificent Temple of Solomon escaped not the ravages of barbarous force.

**Only an Esoteric Temple meets requirements.**—Masonic scholars, many of them Craftsmen of repute, have attempted to read into the Hiramie and Solomonic legends and traditions various other motifs based upon History, Tradition and Mythos, but to the student unprejudiced by conventional hypotheses and acceptances, it will be apparent that truly no Temple made by hands can ever meet the ethical and esoteric requirements.

**The Human Body the real Temple.**—And it will also be just as obvious that upon this one point, the *real* Temple—truly made without sound of hammer or other instrument—positively *not* made with hands—Masonry is silent. Brethren, if you will accept it, the building of the only TRUE Temple in the ONLY TRUE SENSE is the building of the Temple of the Soul and the Three-fold Spirit, the HUMAN BODY.

It may be objected here that this is already admitted and asserted by the Craft. True. But if such is the case, why seek to perpetuate a fable which, in the light of archaeological knowledge of conditions extant in Palestine at the time ascribed to the Solomonic Temple, is even worse than ridiculous and very evidently an original cultus enhanced by the accretions resulting from over-enthusiastic imaginations during succeeding years far beyond the intent of the primal concept. Why fail to teach—to study—and to understand just *how* and *why* the Human Body IS the Temple of the Soul?

**Truth least emphasized in Masonry.**—Strangest of many strange conditions brought about by the passing of Time, the real truth of the Human Temple, while veiled in all the allegory and symbolism of Freemasonry, is the least emphasized therein.

**Holy Bible an exegesis of the Human Temple.**—Notwithstanding, this profound truth is the central point upon which the doctrine and dogma of all the religions of the World depend. The Holy Bible, Old and New Testaments alike, is an exegesis in allegory, simile, parable and prophecy, of the Human Temple, and this fact it will be our purpose in this monograph to demonstrate. The same great truth has been expressed in the architecture, plan and elevation of the religious edifices of the world from the very beginning of human history, as witnessed by the Temples of the Nile, even to the stone forestry of Gothic architecture of the Cathedral Age.

**Rosicrucianism has the Key.**—Since Masonry, the offspring, fails us in our search for the true exegesis, we must turn to Rosicrucianism, the parent, that strange cultus with so many ramifications closely interwoven with the esoteric doctrinalia of all great world religions and arcane societies, for enlightenment.

**Journey of Virgin Spirit.**—In this age-old Brotherhood we trace the journey of Virgin Spirit after its differentiation in the Body of the Solar God, down through myriad involutory forms until each original spark of the Divine Flame has become a true EGO, individualized, and self-conscious.

**Through countless changes.**—Through many changes, transformations and transmutations, the Divine Spark has learned to operate in mineral, vegetable and animal structures and vehicles, and now requires a specialized vehicle with which to contact the exterior, mundane, or material world through definite channels of

perception, whereby exterior impacts and vibrations can be transmuted into consciousness.

Long before a human foetus has been developed in the maternal womb, the Ego has gathered to itself in the spiritual planes of being the material and fashioned the astral archetypal form

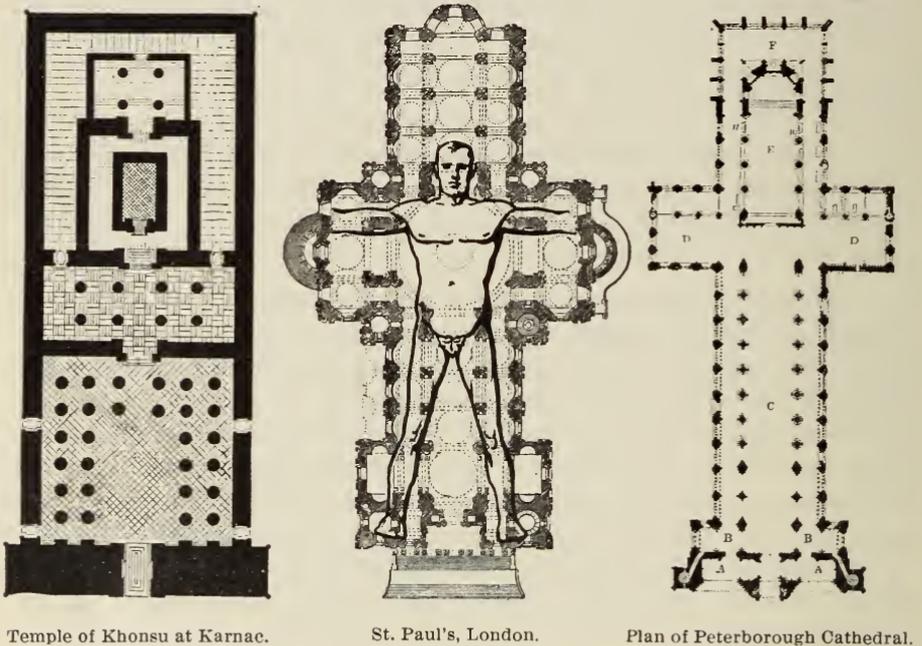


FIG. 84  
THE ANCIENT AND THE MODERN.

An Egyptian Temple and two examples of Christian Cathedrals. These plans together with similar ones of the Hebrew and Greek Temples which may be easily found, show the threefold division of the material Temples analogous to the threefold division of the Human Temple. The Plan of Peterborough Cathedral shows the average type of strictly cruciform cathedral, while the plan of St. Paul's shows the cruciform type adapted to the classic style of architecture and the circular feature at the crossing of the nave and transept is not without its appropriate symbolism from the Rosicrucian standpoint. It is asserted by some researchers that the architect of St. Paul's, Sir Christopher Wren was a Rosicrucian, although we have no positive proof, but it is certain that a Rosicrucian body was operative under the very shadow of St. Paul's at the time of the erection of the present building on that site. The cuts show Man to be the archetype of all Temples.

around which the future physical body, which is to be its home while functioning in the Physical World, is precipitated, crystalized and built.

And just as it has through countless processes of change, transmutation and so-called death, arrived at the human stage of existence, so it will continue through several more changes, deaths

or transmutations, in order to build each time more perfectly the earthly Temple in each succeeding incarnation, until from a state of aboriginal savagery it arrives at the cultural status of the present day.

**The Human Temple is not made with hands.**—Thus the Human Temple in very truth is not made with *hands*, neither is the sound of any hammer or other instrument heard in the building thereof, and in spite of passing millenia it IS eternal in the Heavens, for the visible physical structure is but the impermanent reflection or crystallization of the true, permanent archetype, which is the *real creation*, in the spiritual heavens beyond, where the models or archetypes of all that ever has been, or IS NOW, remain imperishably in Akashic preservation.

**Features of Religious Architecture.**—On examination of the religious architecture of all nations and times we find one prominent feature in common—the trinitarian or three-fold arrangement.

Thus, the Egyptian Temple had its Outer Court or Court of the People; its *Middle Chamber* or Hypostyle Hall, and its *Sanctum Sanctorum* or Holy of Holies into which none but the Hierophant entered.

The Greek Temples had their Pro-Naos or Outer Court; the Naos or Cella, or *Middle Chamber*, and the *Sanctuary* or Holy of Holies, containing the shrine or statue of the God or Goddess.

**The Hebrew Temple.**—The Hebraic Temple had its Outer Court or Place of the People; The *Middle Chamber*, or Holy Place, and the *Sanctum Sanctorum* or Holy of Holies to which similar reverence was paid by the High Priest, and which arrangement was quite evidently based upon traditions and ideas brought over from the former captivity in Egypt. The Temple as rebuilt by Herod kept the same general arrangement, with the addition of Courts for Men, Women and the Gentiles.

**The Pyramid.**—The Pyramid has its *Unfinished Chamber* on the *Ground Floor*; its *Middle* or "Queen's Chamber," and the *Sanctum Sanctorum* or "King's Chamber," although no King has ever been found there. The ceremonial occupant was a "King" in quite another sense from that of political rulership.

**Gothic Cathedrals.**—The Gothic Cathedrals and Minsters besides being cruciform in plan, which is simply the Cosmic Man under the Sign of the Cosmic Cross, have the Nave, or Place of the People; the Choir or Chancel, for the Singers and minor clergy,

corresponding to the Holy Place or Middle Chamber, and the Sanctuary or Holy of Holies into which only the highest ecclesiastical dignitaries and the Celebrant and assistants at the Altar enter. And on the Altar will be found the Tabernacle or Ark of Salvation in which is the Sacred Host, of which the Shewbread of the ancient Temples was the prototype.

Let us correlate these ideas and associate them with the facts regarding the Human Temple as given in the Greatest of our Three Great Lights.

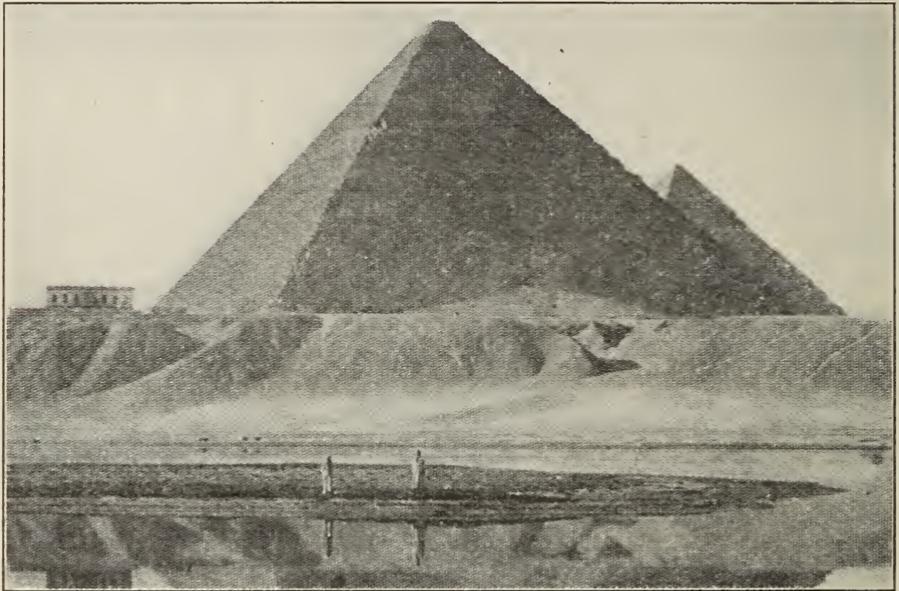


FIG. 85

THE GREAT PYRAMID.

MARVELOUS FOR ITS MATHEMATICAL CORRESPONDENCIES TO COSMIC MEASUREMENTS AND CONDITIONS. FROM THE INITIATIONS WHICH OCCURRED IN THIS VAST TEMPLE ORIGINATED THE LEGEND OF HIRAM ABIF, PREPETUATED UNDER THE ALLEGORY OF THE BUILDING OF KING SOL-O-MON'S TEMPLE.  
(See *Rosicrucian Symbology*, by Khei.)

1st. In 1 Cor. iii, 16, it is written, "Know ye not that ye are the Temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?"

And in the 17th verse it is written, "If any man defileth the Temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the Temple of God is holy, *which Temple YE ARE.*"

**The Tabernacle in the Wilderness.**—The early Tabernacle in the Wilderness symbolized the Human Body in its earlier forms of evolution, termed by Rosicrucians "nascent Man," and represented the human corpus without head or limbs, shewing that the

eternal Spirit only is within before the Ego is fully indrawn, even in the embryonic forms of life, although head and limbs have not yet appeared in the scheme of ultimate development.

The later Temple in Jerusalem, and all the greater Temples which succeeded prototypic forms in all the world religions, symbolized the full grown and fully developed Homo. For exact details paralleling the Biblical description, the student is referred to the Historian Josephus in his "Antiquities," Book 3, Ch. vi., Sec. 4, and Book 8, Ch. iii, Sec. 2.

**Divisions of the Human Torso.**—The Human Torso is divided into three principal sections or divisions:

1. Thorax.
2. Abdomen.
3. Pelvis.

These correlate with the details previously given, as follows:

1. The Pelvis is the Ground Floor, or Porch of the Temple.
2. The Abdomen is the Middle Chamber, or Holy Place.
3. The Thorax is the Sanctum Sanctorum, or Holy of Holies.

The Thorax further symbolizes Heaven, including the vital organs, heart and lungs, and occupies one-third of the torso above the Pelvis.

The abdomen symbolizes Earth, and occupies about two-thirds of the torso above the Pelvis.

The Pelvis symbolizes the Underworld, Hell, Sheol, Hades and the Pit.

**Orientation.**—The Temple of Solomon and all the ancient Temples were accurately orientated. So, too, in the Human Temple the Head represents the East, and in ancient formularies was always buried or laid on funeral pyres in that orientation. The Right Side becomes North, and on the North side of the Thorax we find no vital organ outside the right lung, thereby symbolizing at the same time the Masonic idea of the North as a place "of darkness." The Left Side is the South and in a way symbolizes the sun at meridian, as from the center of the Thorax inclining to the left is the heart, the most vital of all the organs, astrologically ruled by Leo (the Sun) and the seat of dynamic and mechanical power. Last of all and terminating the body are the Feet, symbolizing the West.

**When Human Heart Changes are completed.**—It will be noted that three principal chambers are found within the Thorax itself, of which the Heart is chief. St. Paul tells us of being caught up

into the Third Heaven. Rosicrucianism informs us that when the gradual change in the muscular striae of the Heart is completed

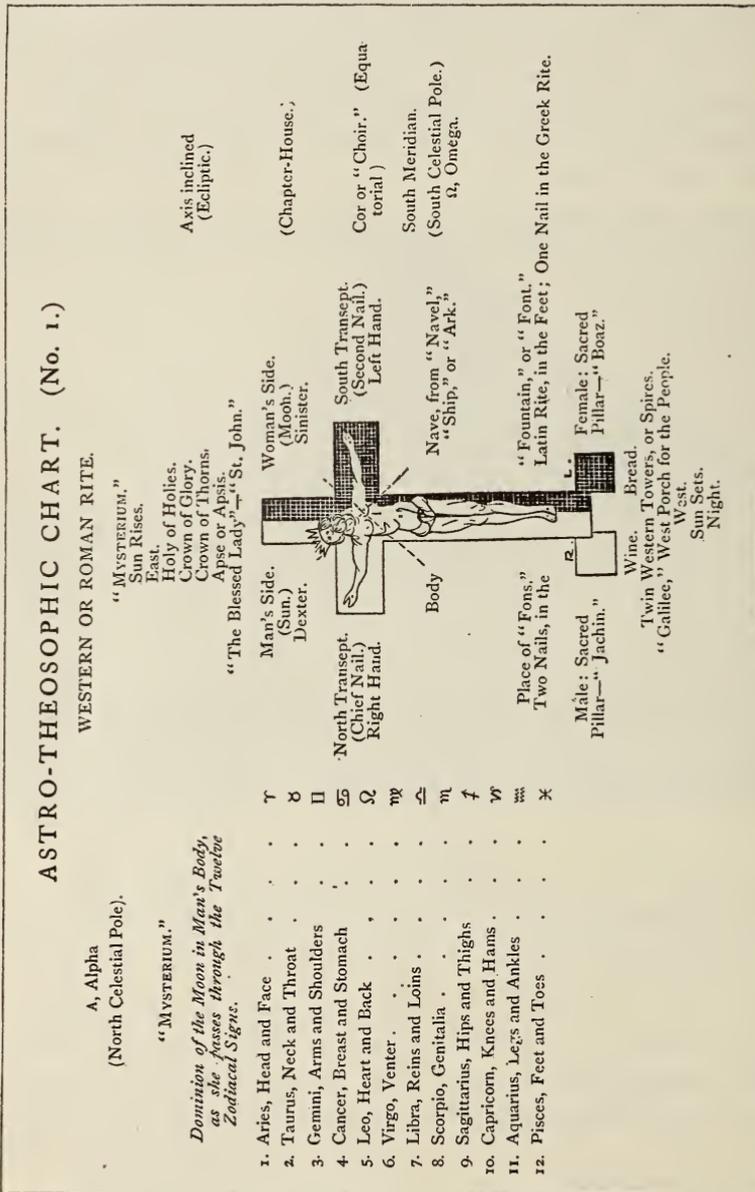


FIG. 86  
CHART SHOWING MAN CORRELATED TO THE CROSS AND THE  
CRUCIFORM TYPE OF CHURCH BUILDING.  
(From “The Rosicrucians,” by Hargrave Jennings.)

that organ will no longer be an involuntary muscle but a purely voluntary one, under the direct control of the Ego. Then indeed

will "all power be given" unto it—the Ego—"both in Heaven"—the Thorax, "and on Earth," the Abdomen, and the remainder of the Torso.

**Veils.**—In the Temples made with hands we find invariably the Veil between the Holy Place and the Sanctum Sanctorum or Holy of Holies. It may be a veil of cloth as in the ancient edifices, or it may be an elaborately carved screen or Rood in Cathedral use, or the simple Chancel Rail, but a separating device we always find. Similarly in the Human Temple we find the diaphragm acting as the "dome-like" veil or firmament separating the Holy Place from the Holy of Holies.

**Stone previously made ready.**—In 1 Kings, vi-7, 8, it is written, "And the House, when it was in building, was built of stone MADE READY BEFORE IT WAS BROUGHT THITHER; so that there was neither hammer nor axe, nor any tool of iron heard in the house while it was in building. The door for the Middle Chamber was in the right side of the house: and they went up with winding stairs into the Middle Chamber, and out of the Middle into the third." Similarly, when the Ego is about to attain mortal birth either originally or in re-incarnating, it gathers to itself the stone or earthy material, which being unorganized matter, is still mineral in its substance, and builds silently until the impregnation of the destined ovum affords opportunity for it to precipitate the spiritual mineral substance into crystallization for new birth. Neither is the symbol of iron absent from our parallel, for while the element iron was and is present in the blood as an active factor, the USE of iron always has been inimical to a true healthy normal birth, and is only resorted to by the modern physician when unnatural processes due to FAULTY CONSTRUCTION of the Temple occur.

**Winding Stairs.**—Then, too, from the Porch or Outer Court, the Ground Floor of the Human Temple, we ascend to the Middle Chamber by the Winding stairs of the colon and lower intestines, and by the winding stairs of the oesophagus into the Sanctum Sanctorum.

**Golden Pot of Manna.**—Here in the Sanctum Sanctorum we find the Ark of the Covenant, the Heart, the Home of the Seed Atom. It is the Golden Pot of Manna from which the food goes forth to the Children of Israel, the Twelve Centers of the Body, as Blood, for nourishment.

**Ark lined with Gold.**—We are told that the Ark was lined inside and out with Gold. Similarly in the Ark of the Human Temple we find the Golden-yellow endocardium inside the Heart, and the Golden-yellow epicardium outside the Heart.

**Mount Moriah.**—But the Ark of the Covenant was on a rock—Mount Moriah, or Es Sakhrah, and at Jerusalem visitors are shown the “Dome of the Rock.” This is already symbolical of the dome-like shape of the diaphragm which in the center appears to protrude through the floor of the Temple into the Holy of Holies or Sanctum Sanctorum. The four chambers of the Heart symbolize the four Cherubim.



FIG. 87  
STONEHENGE. ENGLAND.  
(Courtesy, American Museum of Natural History, N. Y.)

**Worship of Stones.**—It has been an age-old belief that Deity resides in stones. The worship of stones and the important place they occupied in prehistoric rites may be seen in the Druidical relics in Britain and Brittany. Thus the upward rise of the diaphragm gave to Mohammedan religious rites the idea of the Rock starting after Mohammed, while its suspension between Earth and Heaven is further represented by the suspension of the Heart or Ark itself in the Thorax.

**Color of the Heart.**—The red color of the Heart and its fluid content gave to the Zoroastrian his first concept of Fire or Sun

worship, believing that the solar force was imprisoned in this vital organ, and that the blood was the red "hidden fire" of the body; primitive concepts, but in generic value borne out by Rosicrucian knowledge and teaching. Thus the Heart has from remote antiquity been assumed to be ruled by Leo and the center of the Solar forces after their transmutation into dynamic and mechanical energy in the human economy.

**The Four Temples.**—In the Homo, we find Four Temples indicated, corresponding in all respects to the Four Hebraic edifices.

1. The 1st Temple, was the Tabernacle in the Wilderness, and is represented in the Human Temple by the Infancy of the structure.
2. The 2nd Temple, was the one attributed to Solomon, and is typified by the Human Body after the 7th year, indicative of the seven years of building.
3. The 3rd Temple, was that of Zerubbabel, the body of Man in his prime governed by the spiritual soul, after the conjectural 70 years captivity to the flesh.
4. The 4th Temple, is Herod's. Governed by the Great Pure Soul, after the fires of youth are allayed and the Ego has learned to subdue its passions. This Temple begins after the 70 years captivity of the flesh, and is built in 18 months but never completed.

**The Great Cloud.**—The great cloud appearing in Ezekiel's Vision is the Shekinah Cloud, the Blood spreading and rushing to every part of the body, the Human Temple; and the "fire unfolding itself" is the oxygen fire inaugurating the combustion processes in the newly completed and newly born Human Temple in its infancy, maintaining the process through the mortal life to follow.

**Noise of Wings.**—The "noise of wings" referred to by the prophet is the rhythmic pulsation of the Heart, and the "noise of waters" is the audible swish of the blood through the arteries and veins under proper conditions for hearing.

**Thousands that Ministered.**—The "thousand thousands that ministered" referred to by the prophet Daniel are the (microscopically seen) active cells and organisms in the flame-colored blood, that issued before the Ancient of Days, the Ego in its Divine aspect and nature.

**Jesus as a Builder.**—The Great Teacher Jesus was said to have been a builder. "Is not this the carpenter, the son of Mary,

the brother of James, and Joses, and of Juda and Simon?" (Mark vi, 3). "And Jesus answered the people (John ii, 19-20), destroy this Temple and in three days I will raise it up. Then said the Jews, forty and six years was this Temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days? BUT *HE SPAKE OF THE TEMPLE OF HIS BODY.*"

**Theos.**—The Greeks in their writings concerning the word THEOS, or God, show that it also designated Man in his Divine aspect or the Divine nature of Man. This was in the sense of both considered as Suns—self-burning, self-luminous bodies. In the Human Temple we find this to be the status of the Brain, wherein the activity of the thought processes is maintained by continuous oxidation by the self-generated, unquenchable Fire. And the Human Sun is continuously animated by the energy from the Solar Disk or Sun, the Amen of the Egyptians, the "Something Hidden" which transfers its fiery color and power to the AB or Heart.

**Amen; Elements.**—This Amen, or "Hidden Something," was by the Egyptians to be held as shewing forth the power of Four Gods:

1. Neith, Earth, or primordial Matter.
2. Neph, Spirit, or the Air within Man.
3. Pasht, Water, or the fluid composition of the Body.
4. Sebeh, Fire, or heat generated by oxidation.

These correspond very closely to the Four Elements of the Alchemists, and it is little wonder, since the latter are but the Four Elements of Hermes, the Egyptian Avatar, and in accordance with His Gospel we find all four of these Deific attributes operative in the Body which is thus the Temple wherein the four mentioned Egyptian Gods actively functioned.

But Amen is a singular, including a plural, and both masculine and feminine. Hence we look for and find in the Human Temple the cosmic activities as set forth by Hermes. The Earth elements, feminine and passive are acted upon by the Fire element, active and masculine. And the Water elements, passive and feminine are acted upon by the Fire element, masculine and active.

Finally, the Amen which is the AUM of the East Indian cults, is revealed to us as the "true and faithful witness" recorded by Jeremiah (Jer. 42, 5) and the "everlasting to everlasting" as stated by the Psalmist (Psl. 90, 2). In the same Psalm we read, "Lord, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations." And

later we are instructed that we should seek after the Lord, if haply we might feel after Him, **THOUGH HE BE NOT FAR OFF FROM EVERY ONE OF US** (Acts xii, 27-28), and in Him we live and move and *have our being*.

**He cometh with Clouds.**—"Behold he cometh with clouds." Note the statement with, not "in," although either would be appropriate. And when the spiritual light shall be enkindled in each human being, when he shall have attained his salvation from a world of materialism and entered into the higher life "while yet incarnate," then shall each human being see, even as he is seen (Rev. i, 7; 1 Cor. xiii, 12), "for now we see through a glass darkly, but then, face to face." In that time shall each homo see the cloud in which his neighbor cometh, namely, the auric cloud which encompasses every human being, the exterior veils to the Human Temple, and just as the Temples of old had veils of many colors, so does each Human Temple have many colors in its auric veils, colors which reveal to the seer the exact status of the spiritual fabric of the entire structure.

**The Eyes.**—In Biblical record much is said about the "eyes," "kindreds" and "tribulations." The eyes of the Human Temple are the nerves and ganglia which keep constant watch both within and without the structure. The "kindreds" are the communities and unions of cells, muscular and nerve groups, and organic relations. The "tribulation" is the pressure within the Human Body or Human Temple due to gravitative causes and temporary inequalities between internal pressure and exterior atmospheric pressure.

**Sexual Glands.**—Esoterically and physiologically, the sexual glands in both men and women are modifications of a third individuality termed by some the neuter or assexus. This is that aspect of Deity, the enshrined God which has been with each mortal unit since its initial dip into Matter, the hermaphroditic Divinity by virtue of whose power the Human Temple, male or female, becomes a source of creative power, able, even as the Gods, to create, devise, originate and bring forth.

**The Stomach.**—Curiously enough, we find the stomach referred to in many of the Gnostic cults as well as the Bible, and referred to in Rev. ii, 15, speaking of the Nicolaitans and Satan's Seat; and it is a fact that unbridled gratification of the appetite of the stomach leads many people to disease and results in the untimely destruction of the Human Temple. And again in the Tem-

ple Celestial Satan lurks even before the very throne according to the legend, and thus in the Human Temple the powers of destruction lurk closely beside the powers of life and construction.

**Real Temple contains the Ark.**—There can be but one *real* class of Temples among earthly religious edifices. No matter how gorgeous the structure may be, how wealthy and cultured the congregation, that only is a real Temple which contains the Ark. From earliest times the Temples of the Ancients contained the Ark or Shrine of the Deity with the Sacred Elements and Relics deposited therein. Among the Hebrews, the Tabernacle and Temple contained the Ark, and since its loss that race has been obliged to worship only according to the Synagogical usage. In the Christian Church the overwhelming preponderance of membership derive their spiritual sustenance from the presence of the Ark in the Tabernacle on the Altar wherein are maintained the Sacred Elements, the Shewbread, in the person of the Sacred Host. Without the presence of the Ark in true type and form, the structure becomes simply a sacred auditorium or meeting house, just as the Jewish Church is now the Synagogue instead of the Temple. Therefore we call only those structures that contain the Ark, the Temples.

**Man, Masonically designed as such.**—Similarly, when an animal is born into the world, it is classified as to species, either cat, dog, elephant, etcetera. When Man is born, however, he is called simply Man; it may be Chinese, Negro or Caucasian, but nevertheless above all and primarily MAN. In the Masonic ritual the Candidate newly born into the Order is, in the very 1st Degree, placed in the Northeast Corner of the Lodge, officially designated as a MAN and given it strictly in charge ever to walk and act as such before God and Man. Why this notable distinction? Man is simply an evolved member of the Animal Kingdom, and now considered as constituting a Kingdom of his own, but nevertheless still an Animal. It is because, just as Synagogue and Meeting House differ essentially from a true Temple, so does Man differ from all other species of organized life manifestation in that he has within himself the ARK, the true Ark of the Shekinah, the Heart; but, in the Case of Man, containing the SEED ATOM, the spiritual sustenance by virtue of which the EGO, the Divine Tenant, the God enshrined, is enabled to function. In Man alone is the Seed Atom fully indrawn and concentric, making possible and actual the gift and power of Reason, of the Divine Light of the God Consciousness.

**The "Rib Story."**—There is oftentimes more truth in ancient legend and tradition when carefully preserved, than popular imagination accepts. The tradition of the "rib story" will in later ages be better understood than now, when material science affects to scout the findings of occult science, although unconsciously day by day confirming them. Thousands of skeletons unearthed in Egypt, Babylonia and Assyria, have revealed the presence of the two extra ribs. And were we to continue the examination further it might be interesting to see just how the separation into the dual sexes in manifestation was actually accomplished, but this has been covered in the preceding Instructions and belongs also more properly to the study of anthropology in the light of occultism. Our present considerations are primarily Masonic.

**The Lightnings.**—The "lightnings" so often referred to in Biblical literature are the electric flashes along the nerve channels, while the "song day and night" so poetically described by Biblical writers is the audible rhythmic action of the Heart.

**The Place of the Soul.**—Among the Hebrews there existed the tradition and belief that the Home of the Soul was located within the Holy Place where the Name of God engraved upon a golden plate was worn between the eyebrows. And the Rosicrucian explains to us that the true Home of the Soul while incarnate in the earthly Temple of the Body IS within the Holy Place in the Golden Ether of the Divine Name, specifically located between the eyebrows, the exact position being a matter of their secret rituals and formularies.

**The Two Pillars.**—We are told in 1 Kings, vii, 21, that Solomon cast two pillars of Brass, and he set them up in the Porch of the Temple, calling the name of the right one Jachin and the left Boaz. Thus in the Human Temple we find two pillars, the legs, set up in and before the Porch of the Temple, the Pelvis, symbolical of brass from their enduring properties of strength and beauty of formation and construction.

**The Third Pillar.**—In 2nd Kings, xi, 14, and 2 Chron., xxiii, 13, we find allusion to a third pillar, the "Pillar of the Entrance." These Pillars of the Entrance are the Clitoris in the female and the Phallus in the male. The Pillar of the Entrance in each is the Pillar of Wisdom, for it is the terminus of the Creative Pole of the human organism whereby the Wisdom of the Divine Entity or Tenant, the Ego, finds outer manifestation in the ability to Create, on the basis of Strength to support and preserve, and the Beauty

to adorn the Human Temple with lines pleasing to the eye and in harmony with the rhythm of Nature.

**Sanctity of these Pillars.**—So sacred were these Pillars of the Entrance to the Ancients that oaths were sworn upon them, as we find in Genesis xxiv, 2-3, where Abraham says unto his eldest servant, "Put, I pray thee, thy hand under my thigh, and I will make thee swear by the Lord, the God of Heaven and the God of Earth." Many more instances might be adduced, but these will suffice.

**Clitoris.**—These Pillars are of such importance that they may not be passed without further consideration. The Female Pillar or Clitoris is strictly within the Porch, enfolded by the external and internal labia. This is particularly significant in consideration of the Rosicrucian teachings of the feminine aspect of Creative Power, and the consideration of the Absolute as essentially feminine in its creative aspects, the Divine Mother, the Sophia.

**The Pillars differentiated.**—Both Pillars of the Porch and the Pillars of the Entrance have much in common, but in one particular point they are differentiated. The Pillars of Entrance both male and female are hollow, as described in the Biblical account of the Pillars before the Temple Porch. BOTH are surmounted by the Chapitre so accurately described, which is none other than the glans at the extremity of each organ. Under each glans will be found the papillae answering to the Lily work, also in the retired or secret place, functioning in purity yet under conditions popularly regarded as in abasement. The pomegranates are the testes and ovaries, the sources of seed and fecundity as described in Masonic and Biblical records.

**Outer Coverings of the Temple.**—The outer coverings of the Human Temple are the layers of skin; the inner coverings being the muscles, the latter being in their natural state the color of the Biblical Acacia, Seval or Shittim Wood.

**The Great Stones.**—The colors of the skins, racially, covering the Human Temple, will be found to correspond with the Biblical requirements, and the "great stones" recorded are symbolized by the fascia of layers of white tissue.

**Seven years building.**—A little over seven years were required to complete the Solomonic Temple. Compare this with the Rosicrucian teachings regarding the birth of the Physical Body and its completion at the age of seven when the Etheric Body is then born.

**Number employed.**—In the building of the Temple over 150,000 strangers, probably slaves, were pressed into service. Of these, 70,000 were bearers of burdens, 80,000 hewers in the mountains. Over them, besides the chief of Solomon's officers, were 3,300 overseers (according to 1 Kings v, 16), or 3,600 (according to 2 Chron., ii, 18).

**Three Great Directors.**—Above the overseers were the Three Great Directors:

Solomon, King of Israel.

Hiram, King of Tyre.

Hiram Abiff, of the Tribe of Napthali, the son of a Man of Tyre.

These three potentates symbolized the Threefold Spirit of Man:

Solomon—the Divine Spirit, Consciousness, the Sun.

Hiram—the Life Spirit, Animal dynamics, Brain and Spinal cord, the Moon.

Abiff—the Human Spirit, Blood, the Master of the Lodge.

**What they constitute.**—All three taken collectively constitute the EGO or enshrined Divinity. In their operation they extract for the use of the Human Temple the essence known ultimately as Soul, and thus the structure becomes the Temple of the Soul. It is a process of continuous building which is never finished, and the Soul itself becomes three-fold, namely, the Conscious, Emotional and Intellectual Soul. It is also interesting to know that Abiff means broadly "Father."

The Vessels of the Temple are the Organs of the Human Body, made exoterically by Hiram, esoterically by the Ego.

Plato says, "Man has three souls, one in the Head, one in the Thorax and one in the Abdomen." This is literally true, for the Threefold Soul when developed will be found to correlate with the specific functions of these three divisions of the corpus of the Human Temple.

**Other Temple Veils.**—The remaining veils of the Temple are, the 2nd Veil or diaphragm of the Pelvis, a muscular fold separating the abdomen from the Pelvis, formed by the levator ani, and the coccygeous muscles. The 3rd Veil, the hanging for the Court, is the hymen of the female, guarding the entrance to the vagina, the male homologue being the verumontanum within the urethra. Lastly, in the Temple of Herod, according to Acts iii, 2, we find the Hanging for the Gate of the Temple replaced by the Gate

Beautiful, and tressoria, which from the knowledge of the phallic conditions of the times represented the virgin ripe for marriage.

Brethren, these are mysteries, and as such must be approached from the spiritual standpoint. In the words of the Psalmist, "Be still, and KNOW that I AM God" (Ps. 46, 10). The "I AM" is the great principle of Royal Arch Masonry, and if we retire into the silence and ARE "Still" we shall KNOW that the "I AM" within us is God.

**Words of St. Luke.**—Unto us as Masons come the words of the Gospel writer Luke, in the 8th chapter, 10th and 11th verses: "Unto you it is given to KNOW the mysteries of the Kingdom of God; but to *others* in *parables*; that seeing, they might not see, and hearing, they might not understand." And mark, brethren, the 11th verse: "Now the parable is this, the *SEED* is the *Word of God*." Has it ever occurred to us as Masons, that our office in tenanting the Temple of the Body is to develop, generate and supply seed, that in its propagation it may in spite of the separation of the sexes become the "Word of God" veritably MADE FLESH? Of what use the Temple without the priestly office? What higher office for the ruling Hierophant or High Priest of the Human Temple than to assist Divinity in making the *Word* of God to become incarnate flesh?

**Where True Marriage should occur.**—The Temple is the place where true marriage should occur. Marriage is a union and transmutation. If we represent man by a large circle with horizontal diameter and woman the same way but by smaller circle, we shall see that it is a matter of engrafting the larger mind, budding it on to the smaller one, and as the smaller one is to be transmuted into the larger one and become *LIKE* him and *OF* him, so she changes her NAME and NATURE to his.

**Illustration.**—In reality, however, there is no specific male mind isolated as such and represented by the horizontal diameter, and both diameters are now but fractions of the complete, unified figure. Therefore it follows that if the circle stands equally for the female, then there is as much real scientific authority for calling God "Mother" as there is for calling Him "Father."

**Jacob and the Angel.**—In Genesis xxxii, 25, we are told that Jacob wrestled with an angel and "the hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint as he wrestled with him." In our work as custodians of the Temple we too follow in the same path as did Jacob of old. It is the wrestling through the night of material sense,

with the Angel of Truth, and as in Jacob's case, the Angel of Truth must break the largest bone in the body of material Man before we glimpse the truth of our stewardship and receive the blessing desired, which is the Light we assumedly seek in the Degrees of Masonry. The thigh-bone symbolically represents the most tenacious and strongest erroneous beliefs of mortal mind, and the skeleton of the "Earth" man or the solid support of our Temple is the mineral foundation upon which the flesh and blood superstructure is built, and the construction of the Temple will be commendable only in so far as each support, especially the strongest ones, are correct in structure. The bones of the Human Temple represent the lowest degree of Thought, for they are the bases of low vibration upon which the more highly vibrating essentials are supported.

Real Marriage within the Temple, the union of mortal Man, or the priestly Custos of the Temple, with his Spiritual Bride or Spiritual Nature is the subduing of his animal or sex nature, equivalent to the Masonic adjuration to "learn to subdue one's passions." In this view, mortal woman viewed as a separate entity is an illusion of the sex nature and a substitute for REAL spiritual Marriage. Let us analyze the 47th Problem of Euclid so well known to Masonic initiates.

**47th Problem of Euclid.**—With the Triangle before us, let A represent the base, B the upright side forming the right angle, and C the hypotenuse. In this case also let

A represent Matter—Earth.

B represent Light—Spirit.

Now Matter is in one sense interrupted Light, confined, and thus visible to us.

Light or Spirit descends into Earth or "Her," and "She" is said to be warmed by it "Him" and to conceive by "It" or "Him."

Using the same figure, we will assume that

A represents the female, recumbent.

B represents the male upright.

Neither, under present conditions of evolution, can produce without the other, yet even when joined at the angle, they cannot unite their MINDS unless a third party or condition, C, the Hypotenuse, be present. This third party must be equal in potentiality to the other two; in other words, it must be competent to join these other two, and this third condition or Hypotenuse is none other than the spiritual perception which spans all, equal to each terminus, and thus overcoming distance and effecting unity. The

male cannot express his "Name" alone. The female cannot express her "Name" alone, thus the one is merged into the other to present to the world ONE FLESH, or duality in unity. Just as among the Three Grand Masters neither could express his secret name or word alone, but the three must be present, so in the triangle of the 47th Problem of Euclid the three, A, B, C, must be present to complete the triangle, express unity and reveal in its name the deep esoteric truth involved.

**Giving the Name.**—The Master Mason, Master Builder, Master Architect and Master Workman who is competent to utilize the material that these two Fellow Crafts A and B present, and from such material build a Temple fit for God (the Divine Mind) to live in—such a Master also has a "Name" (The Word). No one of the Three has the whole word, each has only a fractional part. Hence the tradition that the "Grand Omnific Word" cannot be expressed (spoken) except in the presence of the Three Masters, A, B, C, or Kings Solomon and Hiram, and Hiram Abiff.

**Square of the Hypothenuse.**—The square of the hypothenuse is equal to the square of the perpendicular and the square of the base. For a third figure, therefore, let each of the triangular sides be the diameter of a sphere. The C equals Truth, the Word of God.

A equals Love, the Mother Mind.

B equals Wisdom, the Father Mind.

Hence the angle of the square is the emblem of virtue, or the union of Love and Wisdom.

Love cannot express itself or herself without the assistance of Wisdom, the Father principle, and herein lies the secret of evolution and the necessity for the union of the sexes.

**Human Temple a Microcosm.**—The Human Temple is also the microcosm of the first of all known Temples, the Garden of Eden, in which God Himself was the Hierophant, Archangels and Cherubim His ministering priests, and Man—made, as we are told, a "little lower than the Angels" (Heb. ii, 7), and to whom even the Angels were to be ministering spirits—the image of Himself. Out of that Garden ran a river, the passage from the mouth to the stomach in the Human Temple. Thence it parted into the rivers Pison, Gihon, Hiddekel and Euphrates. Pison is the urinary system; Gihon the large colon leading to the rectum, Ethiopia or Darkness; Hiddekel is the circulatory system, and the Euphrates is the mystic stream of life of the Divine potency in the blood that preserves and perpetuates.

**Adam and Eve.**—Adam and Eve are the Objective and Subjective Minds in the Human Temple.

The Body symbolizes the Earth and like the Earth is bidden to be fruitful and multiply, even as the Temple is to be fruitful and multiplying in all good works, replenishing the Earth with fruits of the Spirit—meekness, gentleness, patience and love. The Serpent of the Garden is the objective mind deceiving the subjective, crossing or reversing the original conditions in the Garden, causing the Tenant or Custos to eat of the forbidden fruit of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, thence becoming the “prodigal son” wasting his substance in dissipation through the senses and sex. The Crucifixion is the recrossing to the subjective mind’s supremacy and drinking of the cup of bitterness thereby; the Fall of Man was the Fall of the Custos of the Human Temple, the Spirit falling into Materiality; and the Death on the Cross was the death of spiritual perception on the objective and subjective wills.

**Human Aura.**—The original aura of Man as the sacred custos was the golden yellow, then the blue, orange-green and outside rose-pink, but when he transgressed, the golden yellow stepped across the rose-pink and became the flaming red, the Angel with the flaming sword or guardian of the East Gate.

**Colors of the Temple.**—The colors of the Temple auras show the functions observed therein.

Golden yellow flashes show high spiritual thoughts and Divine Love.

Blue-Deep Indigo to pale Yellow, the aesthetic, beautiful and sublime.

Orange Color, physical health.

Green—pea-green, social; bottle-green, financial.

Red—deep wine to fiery, physical, excitability, energy, anger.

Red—crimson to scarlet, the lower passions.

BUT—

THOUGH YOUR SINS BE AS SCARLET, THEY SHALL BE WHITE AS SNOW; THOUGH THEY BE LIKE CRIMSON, THEY SHALL BE WHITE AS WOOL. By entering into the SILENCE we may effect this, for silence is GOLDEN, and the GOLD will transmute all lower and baser metals. That is why we remarked previously—“be STILL, and KNOW that I AM God.”

**How Sin entered into the World.**—By one man (Objective mind) sin entered into the world and death by sin. Death of peace and harmony as long as the objective mind rules the Custos of the Human Temple and his sacrifice will be in vain.

**How the Dead are Raised Up.**—But how are the dead “*raised*” up, and with what body do they come, asks the Biblical inquirer? The dead referred to is the subjective mind. It is raised up by centralizing and concentrating in the Golden Silence. All the biblical wars are symbols of the warfare between the objective and subjective minds, of the material and spiritual Man, on which the safety, preservation and usefulness of the Human Temple depend.

**The Ages.**—The first third of the last six thousand years witnessed the functions of the Pyramids and the Great Community Temples of antiquity. Then the sun was in Taurus and it was known as the Taurian Age.

Next came the Piscean Age of Messiahs, the age of the Oannes and Icthus. This was the age of amplified revelations to mankind.

Now enters the Aquarian Age, when it will be possible for the Custos of the Human Temple to actively function in the offices of the High Priest by entering into the Holy of Holies and controlling the power of the Ark of the Covenant therein. The Prince of Darkness, the objective mind, went out to deceive the Soul of Man, but the day is at hand when the Prince of Darkness shall be overthrown by the powers of Light and Life, which we as Masons are supposed to have received.

**Biblical Definitions.**—The Biblical Bethlehem is the House of Bread, the Stomach, the Manger, where the Three Wise Men, i. e., the Threefold Spirit, shall, in triumph over the appetites of flesh, witness the birth of the Christos through the light and radiance of the Solar Energy received via the Solar Plexus. The Inn is the Head; Jesus in the Temple disputing with the doctors thereof, is the Pineal Body in the Brain involved with the present inhibiting faculties of the Brain, and ultimately triumphing over and confounding them. John baptized with water, but he, Jesus, baptized with the Holy Ghost and with FIRE, the Waters of child-birth and the Fire of passion and bodily combustion during mortal life, over which we triumph to attain immortality.

**Israel in Bondage.**—The Children of Israel in bondage to Pharaoh were the reasoning faculties of primitive and present Man in bondage to the King of Egypt or the Black Land, the objective mind and sensoria. The Children of Israel are also the higher thoughts of the subjective mind, but held in bondage.

**The Disciples of Jesus.**—The Disciples of Jesus and the Levites or Servers of the Human Temple are, the Bony Man, the Venous, Muscular, Arterial, Tubular, Lymphatic, Sympathetic, Organic, Cerebro-spinal and Skin Man, and the Conscious and Sub-conscious Faculties, twelve in all.

Jesus, the mystic thirteenth, was the "Son of Man," the highest development of the Hierophant of the Human Temple, in his time.

"And he carried me away in spirit to a great and high mountain (the Pineal Body) and showed me the great city, the Holy Jerusalem (the Physical Body, the Human Temple) descending out of Heaven (crystallized or precipitated out of the spiritual regions into Matter) from God."

**The Twelve Foundations.**—The twelve foundations of the Holy City or Temple are the twelve salts of the Body.

In reference to the Rib story it is interesting to note that the letter "R" Resh, means rest. "I" is the principle of the Universe. "B" Beth, stands for House. The House is Man's Body. The masculine principle was originally within the House. After its differentiation, out of the House came the feminine principle, the Womb-man.

**The Devil.**—The serpent or devil we have still with us. Study the functions of the Liver, understand its treacherous nature and the trouble it may cause. Then reverse the letters of the word for him who has "lived" not wisely, but too well, and the Devil is present. Also note that the "Tree of Life" was and IS at present in the MIDST of the Garden or Human Temple.

**The Serpent.**—The serpent was condemned to eat the dust of the Earth. In the ancient interpretations, D stands for door, "U" for urn, "S" for sin, "T" for cross. The urn is the door through which the objective mind is condemned to go to the cross, and it is significant that Jesus died the death OF the cross, not ON the cross. When man fell, symbolically, the womb became the apparent tomb of humanity and the objective mind is the stone that seals it as the sepulchre.

**Human Temple is Divine; Number of Cells.**—Our Human Temple is divine, for its inhabitant is the God-man; Jesus as such said, "Come unto me, and I will give you rest," and again, "In my Father's House are MANY mansions." Man is a thought of God projected into manifestation. In the Human Temple it has been estimated that there are over 798 quintillion cells actively func-

tioning. There are indeed many mansions, for each cell has its individual intelligence, and the sum total of the wisdom and intelligence to be placed at the service of Humanity by our Human Temple is the sum total of the intelligence of these 798 quintillion cells. Yet how many of us as Masons use the working tools at our disposal in order, like the men in the parable of the talents, to increase our total intelligence.

Having objective eyes, we see not with the spirit.

Having objective ears, we hear not spiritually.

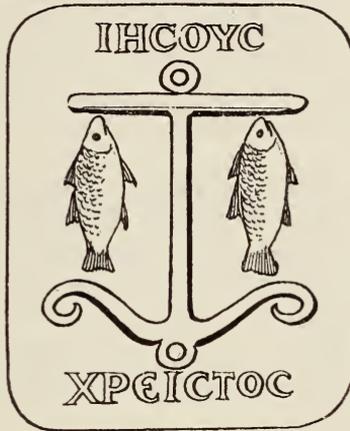
**The Mystic Life Stream.**—Day by day we waste our Divine Powers. The mystic life stream containing the Icthi or Fish in the spermatozoa sometime will cease to flow, and every day brings the dead and dying fish nearer to the Dead Sea.

**Where Jesus Was Born.**—The Man Jesus was symbolically born in Bethlehem of Judea because there was no room for him in the Inn, or the head, meaning the intellectual faculties of his day. The umbilicus or Cable Tow dividing his body signified the two Kingdoms of Israel, the upper part of the body being Israel, the lower Judah. Beth means House; Lehem means Bread. Therefore in his House of Bread the Life Force first begins its nutritive functioning. The Baptism of water in Jordan is the beginning of the spiritual ministry, when the watery fluids rise and spread over the internal parts of the corpus prior to the general distribution of the spiritual afflatus for the later work, and is the cleansing of the Human Temple. The name Jesus in one interpretation really means "Fish in the stream," and its significance will not be lost to those who may be students of the Rosicrucian Teachings.

**The Crucifixion.**—The crucifixion took place between two thieves. So are we crucified daily (as St. Paul said, "I die daily"), between the two principles of the masculine and feminine sexual urge, which would steal our powers and potencies.

**Menstruation.**—When we understand the feminine aspect of the Human Temple we shall see how the Biblical Tree yielded its fruit every month. From the Throne of God and the Lamb (the masculine and feminine principles in Nature) in the midst of the street of it (the Holy City, the Human Temple) and on either side the River (Pison) we find the outer appurtenances of the sex organs. The twelve Gates of the City are the Twelve orifices of the Human Temple; two eyes, two nostrils, two ears, mouth, anus, urethra, umbilicus, two mammae.

**Judas.**—The betrayer Judas is symbolized by the male organ without the Temple which hanged its head, and the symbolism is further carried out by the reference to the office of Judas in John xiii, 29. In the first sex relation Man meets with RESISTANCE, and in rupturing the cord and hymen the blood is sprinkled over the lintel of the entrance.



The "Ichthus" (Fish) of the Early Christians.

FIG. 88

THE "ICHTHUS" (*Fish*) OF THE EARLY CHRISTIANS.  
THE SIGN OF THE FISH.

Ancient seals, gems, etc., bearing the symbol of the Fish are well known to most occult students, especially those familiar with the philosophy of the Gnostics. The Greek word for Fish "Icthus," is made up of the initial letters of the five Greek words *I*eous *C*hristos. *T*heou *U*ios *S*oter, meaning, Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Saviour. This word and the source of its derivation are not entirely unknown to Rosicrucian students, but it is also well to point out that the symbolism of the Fish in connection with Christianity has had many more applications than that of a mere acrostic. In the life of Jesus, the *C*hristos, the Miracle of the Loaves and the Fishes, the choosing of the Fishermen, the authorizing of "Fishers of Men," the Sign of Pisces (the Fishes) and many other features point to the symbolism of the Fish as containing much more than a superficial meaning. The Fisherman's Ring of the Roman Pontiff in itself is a persistence of an ancient occult symbology. Needless to say, the subject will prove of interest to all Rosicrucian Initiates.

So far we have considered the Biblical analogies to the Human Temple even to minutiae. But esoterically we find the same truth prevails. Thus the

1. Physical Body is the Ground Floor of the Temple.
  2. The Etheric Body is the Middle Chamber of the Temple.
  3. The Astral Boy is the Sanctum Sanctorum of the Temple.
- The last analogy obtaining only while mortal incarnation oc-

curs and shows forth the application of the Threefold Body. Each of these Bodies or divisions has its full equipment of Temple furniture in the organs and psychic centers wholly or partially developed at the present stage of evolution.

The purpose of this monograph has not been to satisfy a certain curiosity regarding the interesting analogies cited. It is a real, vital message if you will receive it as such. Human life is more than a life of sense gratification. The duty of the priestly Hierophant is vastly more than directing the orderly functioning of countless millions of active cells. Let this message come to you as Masons as the voice of one crying in the wilderness, "prepare ye, for the Kingdom of God is at hand"—is here, and WITH-IN YOU.

What can we do, small in number as we are? The last Avatar delivered his message to twelve illiterate men and the whole world has suffered convulsions of thought ever since from the active exercise of their zeal. One of those men was a traitor and such we have ever with us in every twelve. Another betrayed his Master, yet to him the Master gave the Keys of Heaven and Hell and upon him built a Church against which He said that the Gates of Hell should not prevail.

If our twentieth century intelligence has progressed ever so little beyond the intelligence of the twelve men of that day in ancient Judea, then we can do much. If we seek the flesh pots of Masonic titular honors and fame we shall accomplish nothing.

**What we should work for; Divisions of the Temple.**—Let us work first of all to rid Masonry of the lie in its philosophy, for we may be sure that never will it take its rightful place in the world while a fable originated in enthusiastic ignorance is perpetuated in tacit, unintelligent acceptance. Spiritual power does not consort with untruth. Cleanse the fabric of Masonry and a new power will rise in the world the like of which cannot now be conceived.

**Spread the Message.**—Let every member who receives it undertake to spread the message of this monograph among his Masonic acquaintances and the seed sown will in due time bear fruit. It may even be that this message will prove to be the first step in a widespread movement for a better Masonry than we have ever known, than even its Founders ever knew, because of the greater intelligence of the Age.

**The Shekinah.**—Before closing it is proper to add a few lines descriptive of the theories advanced by Bro. G. S. Faber in his book, the "Mysteries of Cabiri," 704, e, 14, 1863. In writing of

the Ark he says: "The SHEKINAH dwells between Man and Woman (Talmud, Sotah 17 B). When Israel worshipped the Lord the Kerubim in the Temple lovingly turned their faces to each other and embraced. This was the Union of God and Israel. The Covenant between God and Israel is that of the restoration of the fallen and divided sex-nature by regeneration. Of this regeneration, the ARK was the prototype.

Upon the ARK were imposed two Kerubim, male and female.

1. Of GOLD; of beaten work. The sublimated state of their lower nature.
2. Facing one another. In an act of common contemplation and ecstasy.
3. Inverted, with wings uprising above their heads, to denote the exalted nature of their aspiration. S. .U. .A. .T. .

The result of their contemplation was the manifestation of Deity midway between them, at the point of impact of their thought waves; thus joined together by God.

The crisis of animal conjunction is a shadow of the ecstasy of spiritual union. "As above, so below."

*Cf. Hebrews ix, 1-5*, "Holiness to the Lord" necessary for those who would pierce beyond the Veil (Between the commonplace and the spiritual treatment of certain topics) as High Priests by Initiation.

And here is the symbolic meaning of the objects in the ARK.

1. Aaron's Rod. The surrender of the Magical Will of the Kerubim to the Divine Will, whose emblem is the still, dark cavity of the Ark (Divine Darkness).
2. The Two Tables of the Law. The keeping of the Law and its Spirit, or the positive and negative sides.
3. The Pot of Manna. The Bread of Heaven "like wafers made with honey." Panis supersubstantialis. The white brilliance of Kether. Creative force. *Rev. ii, 17*.

**Inner Meaning.**—The Cavity and the objects represent the male and female organs of generation in a state of consecrated conjunction and equilibrium. *Cf. Logion*, "When the two shall be made one," etc., etc.

1. The Cavity, is the female womb or receptive cavity, or matrix. Kabbalistically Eve-Malkuth. He, Vau.
2. Aaron's Rod, which budded and bore fruit, male organs of generation, Kabbalistic meaning of Yod, Yesod.

3. Tables of Stone; male testes. Witnesses or Stones are the female ovaries. According to Kabbalistic tradition and Boehme, the Tables were spherical.
4. Pot of White Manna; The male semen, life force and creative essence, secreted by the action of the Stones on which the Law was imposed. This Manna (Man-hu) is to be kept for your (re)generation. *Ex. xvi, 33.*

The physical organs and functions are to be kept utterly in subjection, even as placed beneath the contemplative Cherubim—they have their correspondences in the higher portion of man's nature, as signified by the uplifting and activity of the Cherubim's wings.

Boehme says, Man is FIRE and sows soul. Woman is Water and sows spirit, and both sow flesh.

FIRE and Water in conjunction and interaction generate Air and Warmth, Spirituality and Substance; hence four arms of the Rose Cross; but this substance is that of the regenerated body of glory.

The Cherubim contemplate the rebirth of the two individuals in God. The interaction caused by contemplation transplants from the one to the other their respective male and female tinctures, each becoming impregnated with that tincture of which naturally he or she is deficient. In the divided sex nature of each an image of the bisexual paradisaical body is thus built up, undergoing a period of gestation, fixation, quickening, in correspondence with the natural process until in the appointed time—"unto us a son is born."

It is also notable that in the Graal story, the Graal Ark contained:

1. Aaron's Rod—the Lance Head.
2. Tables of Stone—the Three Nails.
3. Cavity—the Graal Dish. (Grael.)

These examples have not been cited for the purpose of dwelling upon sexual analogies unduly, but in order to show how in very truth the Human Temple is in its every aspect a true Microcosm of the Greater Cosmic Temple. When we as Masons realize the potential powers of the "I," the "ME," and the "THOU" we shall gain a concept of our responsibility not only to ourselves, not only to the Great Brotherhood of Man, but our responsibility to the Divine spark of the Great Central Flame which dwelleth in each. To enter consciously into the active assumption of such responsibility is to "KNOW OURSELVES."

**Life Work of the Individual.**—The life work of the individual is vastly more than the mere matter of directing the organization of protoplasm. That is why we are particularly instructed to take no thought of the morrow—"what we shall eat, etc." Let us keep in mind at all times that vaster, more stupendous truth, that we, Human Temples, are the microcosmic reproductions of the macrocosmic Temple, the Grand Man of the Universe, and that if from one point of vantage we could see the starry galaxy in its entirety we should behold on the cosmic scale the colossal amplification of our own selves—the universe in the shape of the Cosmic or Grand Man; of which suns and their attendant solar systems are but the organs or various vital cosmic functions. Then when we comprehend the relations borne by Mother Earth to the Grand Man of the Universe, we shall also comprehend how we are brought forth of that marriage or union as individual Temples, each having microcosmic organs and vital functions corresponding to those on the vaster scale.

**Man, a Mine.**—Lastly, Brethren, remember that Man, chemically, physiologically and alchemically is a composition of metals and minerals. Man therefore is a MINE, and whenever we speak of the "Quarries of Masonry" we should not mean the useful and agreeable occupation of delving into Masonic history, records, archives, etc., but intellectually mining Man himself, for the truer and deeper knowledge of ourselves, that shall give us the Light that our rituals symbolically confer, but which it is our bounden duty to seek in stern reality. In that way we shall enter into the light that in very truth passes all human understanding and takes us into the very presence of the Great Architect of the Universe, whose workmen we here on earth pretend to be.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 13

1. Does the Brotherhood enter into any Masonic controversies?
2. What does it teach regarding the origin of Freemasonry?
3. Do the Rosicrucian teachings indicate the true Temple?
4. How may any degrees be misused?
5. What is the origin of each Fraternity?
6. To what House are allusions frequently made in Masonry and Rosicrucianism?
7. How may we be helped to show the identity of the true Temple?

8. When was the esoteric truth "lost"?
9. Outline the Fable of the Material Temple of Solomon.
10. What was its size? Are its ruins comparable to those of even later date?
11. What sort of Temple is required to meet conditions involved?
12. What is the REAL Temple?
13. Where is the Truth least emphasized in this matter?
14. What is the best exegesis of the Human Temple?
15. What body has the key to the mystery?
16. What journey is traced in the Tradition?
17. What changes are encountered?
18. Is the Human Temple made with hands?
19. What are the notable features of all religious architecture?
20. How is comparison made with the Hebrew Temple? The Pyramid? Gothic Cathedrals?
21. How with the Tabernacle in the Wilderness?
22. What are the divisions of the human torso?
23. Give analogies in orientation.
24. What will result when human heart changes are accomplished?
25. Describe the Veils of the Temple.
26. What is the Stone previously made ready?
27. What are the Winding Stairs?
28. What is the Golden Pot of Manna?
29. Why is the Ark lined with gold?
30. How is the "Dome of the Rock" symbolized?
31. What was the age-old belief regarding stones?
32. To what did the color of the Heart and its content give rise?
33. What were the Four ancient Temples?
34. How is each one symbolized?
35. What is the "Great Cloud"?
36. What is the "Noise of Wings"?
37. What are the "Thousands that minister"?
38. What is said of Jesus as a Builder?
39. Give the Greek definition of Theos.
40. What was the Egyptian "Amen"?
41. Give the Egyptian scheme of the elements.
42. What is meant by the line—"He cometh in clouds"?
43. What are the "Eyes, "Kindreds" and "Tribulations"?
44. Of what are the sexual glands a modification?
45. What is said esoterically of the stomach?
46. What must the REAL Temple contain?

47. Why is Man, Masonically designated as such?
48. Give an idea of the "Rib story."
49. What are the "Lightnings"?
50. What is the place of the soul?
51. What are the "Two Pillars"?
52. What is the Third Pillar?
53. What particular sanctity attaches to these pillars?
54. What is said of the Clitoris?
55. How do the Pillars differentiate?
56. What are the Outer Coverings of the Temple?
57. What are the Great Stones?
58. What was the number employed on the Temple said to be?
59. Who were the Three Great Directors?
60. What did these three directors constitute?
61. What are some other Temple Veils?
62. What is said of the "I AM"?
63. What does St. Luke say about the mysteries?
64. Where should true marriage occur?
65. Give an illustration.
66. What is the story of Jacob and the Angel?
67. How is it explained?
68. Explain the 47th Problem of Euclid esoterically.
69. How was "The Name" to be communicated originally?
70. Why cannot it be so given now?
71. Explain the Square of the Hypothenuse.
72. What is the Human Temple said to be?
73. What are Adam and Eve in relation to the Human Temple?
74. What is said of the Human Aura?
75. What were the colors of the Temple?
76. What may become of "scarlet sins"?
77. How did sin enter the world?
78. How are the Dead "Raised UP"?
79. Give the "Ages."
80. Give the biblical definitions of bodily organs.
81. What is meant by Israel in bondage?
82. Who were the Disciples of Jesus?
83. What were the Twelve Foundations?
84. How is the word "Devil" to be derived?
85. Why is the Human Temple Divine?
86. What is the number of bodily cells estimated to be?
87. What is the mystic life stream?
88. Where was Jesus born?

89. How does the Crucifixion take place?
90. Give the meaning of menstruation in connection with this legenda.
91. What is the symbolism of Judas?
92. What are the esoteric divisions of the Temple?
93. What should we work for especially?
94. What message is to be spread?
95. Where dwells the Shekinah?
96. What is the inner meaning of it?
97. What does Boehme say of Fire and Water?
98. What do the cherubim contemplate?
99. What is the life work of the individual?
100. How is man said to be a mine?



INSTRUCTION XVI.  
CHRISTIAN ROSENCREUTZ.

HIS REAL AND ALLEGED CONNECTION WITH THE ROSICRUCIAN  
ORDER AND HIS STATUS THEREIN. DETAILS OF THE  
ROSENCREUTZ LEGEND AND TRADITION.

---

“C. RC.”—Much has been written about the life, character and works of the personality known as Christian Rosencreutz, commonly referred to among Rosicrucian students as “C. RC.”

**Many accounts.**—The accounts of his life, written by exponents of nearly every school of occult thought, Masonic researchers, apologists of an historical turn of mind as well as those who sincerely desire to be recognized as accredited authorities and biographers, agree in essentials, but differ widely in their attempted explanations of the esotericism involved.

**An encyclopaedic testimony.**—One encyclopaedist states that some of the writers who assumed to be Rosicrucians “were moral and religious reformers, and utilized the technicalities of chemistry (alchemy) and the sciences generally as media through which to make known their opinions, there being a flavor of mysticism or occultism promotive of inquiry and suggestive of hidden meanings discernible or discoverable only by adepts.

**Johann Valentin Andrea.**—The same encyclopaedist continues: “The publication of the *Allgemeine und General-Reformation der ganzen weiten Welt* (Cassel, 1614), and the *Fama Fraternitatis* (Cassel, 1615), by the Lutheran theologian Johann Valentin Andrea (1586-1654), caused intense excitement throughout Europe, and they not only led to many re-issues but were followed by many pamphlets, favorable and otherwise, whose authors generally knew little, if anything, of the real aims of the original author, and doubtless not in a few cases amused themselves at the expense of the public.

**Date of First MS.**—“It is probable that the first work was circulated in MS. about 1610, for it is said that a reply was written

in 1612 (according to Herder), but if so, there was no public mention of the cult before that decade.

**Genesis overlooked.**—"The curious legend, in which the fabulous origin of the so-called society was enshrined (that a certain Christian Rosencreutz had discovered the secret wisdom of the East on a pilgrimage in the 15th century), was so improbable, though ingenious, *THAT THE GENESIS OF THE ROSICRUCIANS WAS GENERALLY OVERLOOKED OR IGNORED,*<sup>1</sup> but the worthy objects of the fratres were soon discovered and supported by several able men, the result being a mass of literature on the subject."<sup>2</sup>



FIG. 89  
JOHANN VALENTIN ANDREA.



FIG. 90  
JACOB BOEHME.

**Point of emphasis.**—The italics in the quotation noted above are ours, for they indicate the exact point that requires emphasis. First, in the discussion of the legenda, the REAL origin and antiquity of the Rosicrucians was "overlooked," and this has been the main reason for the mass of conjecture, hypothesis, imagination and guess work of later writers through all the succeeding years. Second, in the contemplation of the legenda and the romance connected therewith in the "Chymical Marriage," Christian Rosencreutz has become popularly accepted as the Founder of the Order, which, however, is not the exact truth. Third, the discussion regarding the peculiar teachings of Rosicrucian writers, real and alleged, and the relation of these writings to the moot religious controversies of the day, was the beginning of the mass of

literature, most of it speculative, which has formed the basis of nearly all subsequent writings concerning the Order and its Teachings.

**Rosicrucians agree with Jacob Boehme.**—For those students who desire to study original works on the subject, the following are recommended:

Echo of the Society of the Rosy Cross, 1597.

Confessio Fraternitatis Rosae Crucis, 1615.

Thesaurinella Chymica-aurea, Sec. 244, Raymundii Lullii Theoria.

Themis Aurea, hoc est, de legibus Fraternitatis Rosae Crucis; by Michael Maier, Cologne, 1615.

Epistola ad patres de Rosea Cruce, Frankfurt, 1617.

De Naturae secretis quibusdam at Vulcaniam artem chymicae ante omnia necessariis, addressed to the Masters of the Philosophic Fraternity of the Rosy Cross, 1618.

**Andrea leaves the Order.**—While it is certain that Andrea was at first closely identified with the Rosicrucians, he, as a Lutheran clergyman and theologian, later found himself at variance with them, and endeavored in his subsequent writings to discredit his former association with them. Later he attempted to found in Austria the "Fraternitas Christi," with which many of the Protestant Austrian nobility became identified. It was suppressed by an opposition Order founded by the Catholic Church and known as the "Blue Cross." Heckethorn publishes an amusing ritual ascribed to the Rosicrucians, which, as any initiate would easily recognize, was purely for the purpose of diverting attention from the real practice of the Art.<sup>3</sup>

**English Rosicrucians.**—It is with English Rosicrucianism that we are particularly interested and the complete chronology of the Rosicrucians can be had in detail from the interesting and authoritative volume by Mr. H. V. A. Parsell, entitled "The Rosicrucians and Freemasonry." Among English Rosicrucians, Robert Fludd (Robertus de Fluctibus), was the great exponent and is commonly referred to as "the Great English Rosicrucian." His most important works are "Apologia et Compendiaria Fraternitatem de Rosea Cruce suspicionis et infamiae maculis aspersam, vertatis quasi Fluctibus abluens et abstergens," Leyden, 1616, and "Tractatus Apologeticus integritatem Societatis de Rosea Cruce defendeus," Lugdavi Batavorum, 1617.

**Fludd and Heydon.**—After Fludd came Heydon, who was born in 1629. Notable among his writings on the Rosicrucians occur the following lines, taken from his “An Epilogue for an Apilogue”: “I shall tell you what Rosicrucians are, and that Moses was their father. Some say they were of the order of Elias, some of Ezechiel, others define them to be the officers of the generalissimo of the world; they are as the eyes and ears of the Great King, seeing and hearing all things, for they are seraphically illuminated as Moses was, according to this order of the elements, earth refined to water, water to air, air to fire.” Such a statement as this must have called forth derision among those unfamiliar with occult or



FIG. 91  
DR. ROBERT FLUDD.



FIG. 92  
MICHAEL MAIER.

especially Hermetic verbiage at that time, as it surely does now. However, the significance of this statement lies in the fact that the Rosicrucians of that time claimed an origin far antedating that of the Rosencreutz legend and agreeing with the historical record as given in the Neophyte's Degree in our modern Colleges.

**Elias Ashmole and others.**—The year 1646 was notable for the institution by Elias Ashmole, William Lilly, Dr. Thomas Wharton, Dr. J. Hewitt, Dr. J. Pearson and others, of a Rosicrucian society in London. The main purpose of their organization, it is said, was to carry out the idea of the erection of the House of Solomon, as contained in Bacon's “New Atlantis.”

**Work of the Society.**—This society was to remain as secret as the Island of Bensalem, in other words, it was to study nature esoterically. The carpet of the lodge was to represent the Pillars

Utriusque Cosmi  
 MAIORIS scilicet et MINORIS METAPYSICA, PHYSICA  
 ATQVE TECHNICA

HISTORIA

In duo Volumina secundum COSMI differentiam diuisa.

AVTHORE ROBERTO FLUD alius de Fluctibus Armigero.

& in Medicina Doctore Oxoniensi

Tomus Primus

De Macrocosmi Historia in duos tractatus diuisa

Quorum	} Primus de	} Metaphysico Macrocosmi et Creaturarum illius ortu Physico Macrocosmi in generatione & corruptione progressu.
		Arithmetica. Musica. Geometria. Perspectiva. Artes Mathematicas Motus } Scientiam Temporis } Cosmographiam Astrologiam Geomantiam

OPPENHEMII  
 EREJOHAN-THEODORI DE BRY  
 Typis HIERONYMI GALLERI  
 ANNO MDCLXXVII



FIG. 93. Title Page from R. Fludd, Opera. Tome 1, Anno MDCLXXVII Utriusque Cosmi Maioris Scilicet et Minoris Metaphysica, Physica Atque Technica Historia.

of Hercules; seven steps were used in the rite, the first four of which symbolized the Four Elements, Fire, Air, Water and Earth, and the remaining three steps symbolized Salt, Sulphur and Mercury. These steps led to an "exchequer" or higher court, on which were displayed the symbols of creation, or the work of the six creative days. The meetings were held in Masons' Hall, Masons' Alley, Basinghall Street, London.

**Exoteric meaning of the Name.**—It is often assumed that the name of the Soicety is derived from that of Christian Rosencreutz. Other writers assert it to have been originated from the armorial



FIG. 94  
ELIAS ASHMOLE.



FIG. 95  
DANTE ALIGHIERI.

bearings of the Andrea family, the fallacy of which is shown by the fact that the Society antedated that family. Other speculators have concluded that the name is taken from ros—dew, and crux—the cross. The latter is assumed to symbolize LVX, or light, because the figure X represents the three letters; and Light, according to Rosicrucian teaching, also produces gold, while dew-ros, was considered a most potent solvent. Still other apologists believe that the rose and cross of the Rosicrucians were taken from the seal of Martin Luther, which was a cross-crowned heart rising from the center of a rose.

**Antiquity of the Rose and Cross.**—But we have only to turn to the Hindu mysteries, where we discover that Lakschemi, the wife of Vishnu, was found in a rose with 108 leaves, identical with the number of beads on an Indian rosary, and to the Hindus the cross was the symbol of creation. In the Eleusinian Mysteries we

find the same importance of the rose; Apuleius makes Lucius to be restored to his original form by eating roses; the "Romance of the Rose" is notable in Provençal literature.

The five fundamental laws of the Rosicrucians were:

1. To dress in the costume of the country in which they lived.
2. To heal the sick, gratuitously.
3. To attend every year the meeting of the Order.
4. When dying, to choose a successor.
5. To preserve the secret one hundred years.

**Poetical Fictions of the Rosicrucians.**—The poetical fictions regarding the Rosicrucians are best known from the writings of Joseph Francis Borri, of Milan. To his writings is largely due the "poetic splendor which surrounds the Order," and much of the enhancement of mysticism and mystery. But in his later works Borri inclined to heresy and was seized and condemned to perpetual imprisonment by the Inquisition. He died in the Castle of St. Angelo in 1695. The principal work of Borri to which reference is made is his "Key to the Cabinet of Signor Borri" and is substantially the kabalistic romance entitled "The Count de Gabbalis," published in 1670 by the Abbe de Villars.

**The Elementals in Fiction.**—According to the above named work, Man is surrounded by hosts of beautiful beings, who may be enlisted in his service. These beings are described as Elementals. It peopled the Air with Sylphs, the Fire with Salamanders, the Water with Undines and the Earth with Gnomes. These beings, according to the fanciful concept of the times, could be secured to Man's service by incorporation in mirrors, rings and precious stones, and were obliged to appear when summoned.

**Man's Superiority.**—Man was held to be superior to these beings in one great respect—he had an immortal soul. Any one of these beings, it was believed, could become partaker in Man's immortality by inspiring in one of the humans the passion of love. Thus we have Shakespeare's Ariel, a sylph; "Undine," "Rape of the Lock," "Masque of Comus," the poem "Salamandrine" and many others. The Elementals were said to be composed of the purest atomic particles of the substance of which they were habi-tant, either Earth, Air, Fire or Water, and that in consequence of having no other antagonistic element in their substance they could live indefinitely, but not immortally.

Further agreement with the Signatura Rerum.—The Rosicrucian writers of acknowledged authority in those times further

*Integræ Naturæ*

*Speculum Artisque imago*

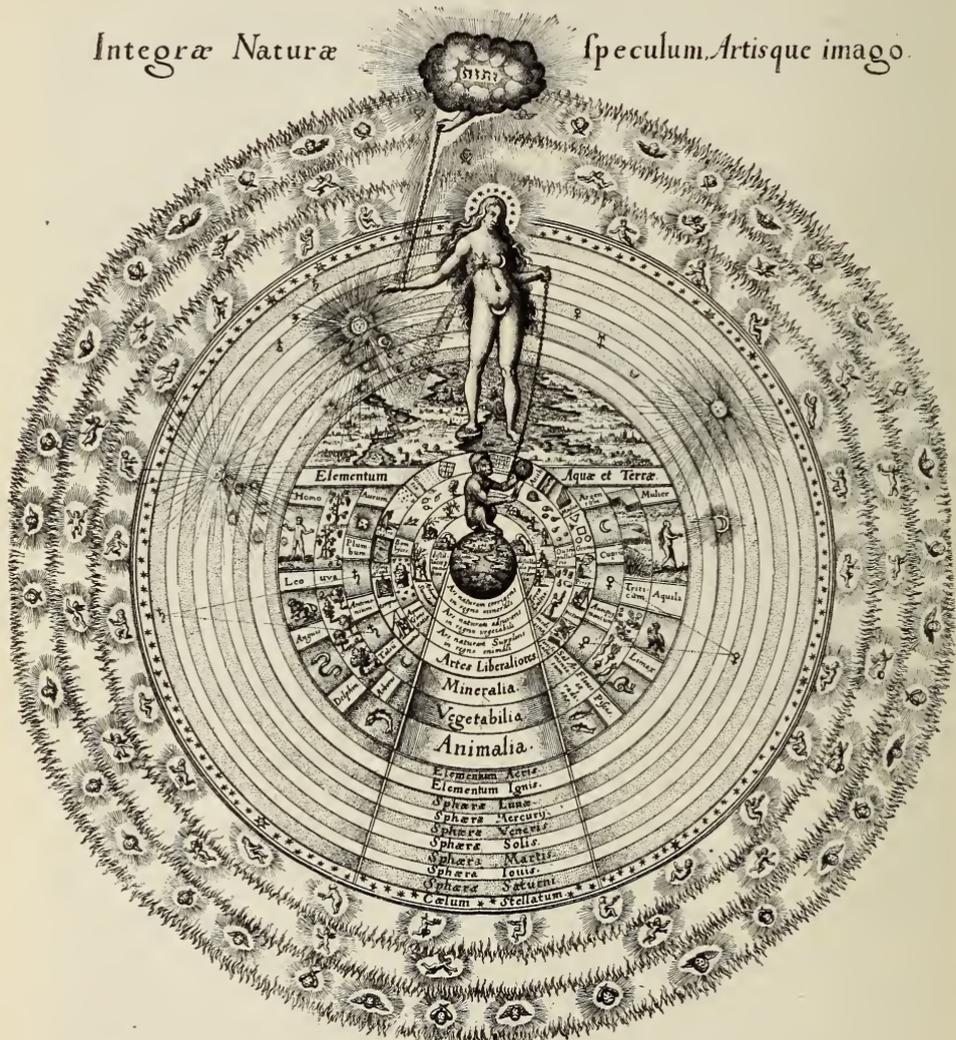


FIG. 96

BEAUTIFUL ENGRAVED PLATE BY THE CELEBRATED THEODORE DE BRY FROM THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF FLUDD'S DE MACROCOSMI HISTORIA. FROM THESE PLATES THE STUDENT WILL BE ABLE TO TRACE THE VARIOUS PROCESSES IN ROSICRUCIAN COSMOLOGY OUTLINED IN THE INSTRUCTIONS GIVEN IN THIS BOOK.

agreed with the Signatura Rerum (a notable work by Jacob Boehme), that everything in this external world “has outwardly impressed upon it its inward spiritual character, and they taught

that by the practice of virtue the Mortal could attain to knowledge of the Spiritual while yet incarnate and discover the Philosopher's Stone, which could not be found except by the regenerate, for it is in close communion with the heavenly essence." Thus the letters INRI signified to them, *Ignis Natura Regenerando Integra*.

**Rosicrucians at the Hague.**—A strong body of Rosicrucians is known to have existed at the Hague in 1622 from the fact of the public expulsion of Montanus, or to give his true name, Ludwig Conrad, of Bingen. These Rosicrucians, while maintaining the usual "Great House," met on call of the Imperator in such cities as Amsterdam, Danzig, Nuremberg, Hamburg, Mantua and Venice. They wore in public a black silk cord, but at Convocations they wore a gold band to which were attached the Cross and Rose. Their certificate of membership consisted of a large parchment, duly inscribed with great ceremony and bearing many seals.

**Rosicrucians in Germany.**—That the Order flourished in Germany between 1641 and 1765 is known from the MS. of Dr. von Harliss.<sup>4</sup> This group followed the custom of all other known groups, in the ancient salutations. The method of addressing each other was, according to this custom, as follows: First *frater*, *Ave frater*; the answer was, *Roseae et aureae*; first *frater*, *crucis*; both together, *Benedictus Deus qui dedit nobis signum*. Then they mutually produced their seals and communicated "the name."

**New Constitution of 1714.**—A new Constitution appeared in 1714 (note its close approximation to the commonly ascribed origin of Freemasonry in 1717), which was entitled "The True and Perfect Preparation of the Philosopher's Stone of the Brotherhood of the Golden and Rosy Cross." "Published for the benefit of *Filiorum Doctrinae*, by *Sincero Renato*, Breslau." This document divides the practice of the Art into two separate groups—*Practica Ordinis Minoris* and *Practica Ordinis Majoris*; really two distinct Fraternities in one, the more important being the "Brethren of the Golden Cross," whose symbol was a red cross, and the "Brethren of the Rosy Cross," whose symbol was a green cross.

**Notable German Foundations.**—Rosicrucianism was openly professed by the Duke of Saxe-Weimar in 1742 (Duke Ernest Augustus), Frederick William of Prussia, afterward King Frederick William II. He established a Rosicrucian Lodge or College at Berlin in 1786, but the notorious Religious Edict of 1788, intended to suppress the Illuminati and restore the censorship of the Press, compelled the College to resort to such secrecy that later traces of

it are lost. A pseudo-expose entitled "The Rosicrucian in his Nakedness," by Master Pianco, supposedly an ex-member of the Society, was published in 1782 as a violent attack upon the Order at large and was given credence by many who had not the slightest idea of what Rosicrucianism really meant.<sup>5</sup>

Nuremberg, Dresden, Munich and Ancona were notable centers at about this time (1780-1790).

**Asiatic Brethren.**—Every Order has its offshoots, and this is true of Rosicrucianism. About 1780 was originated the Order of Asiatic Brethren. Its basis was Rosicrucian and its meetings were called Lodges of Melchizedek, and admitted Jews, Turks, Armenians and Persians. The complete title of the organization was "Order of the Knights and Brethren of Saint John the Evangelist from Asia in Europe." The Masters were styled "Worshipful Chiefs of the Seven Churches of Asia." While this Order manifested much hostility to the original Rosicrucians, nevertheless the Third Degree members were officially styled "True Rosicrucians." The full names of the degrees follow:

- 1st Degree. Knights and Brother-Initiates from Asia in Europe.
- 2nd Degree. Wise Masters.
- 3rd Degree. Royal Priests, or True Rosicrucians of the Degree of Melchizedek.

**Ritual of the "Theoretical Brethren."**—A book entitled "The Theoretical Brethren or Second Degree of Rosicrucians" appeared in 1785. According to this ritual, which, if it ever really existed is now obsolete, the Candidate must first be initiated on the Scotch Rite. He is then conducted into a large room illuminated by candles. At the east end is a square Altar, with a black cloth cover bearing an open Bible, the Laws and Landmarks of the Order and a black embroidered apron.

On the central cloth there was a globe with two rings, from the outer one of which rays proceed into clouds, in which are seen the Seven Planets. Above Mars is the Cubical Stone, and above the Globe the Blazing Star. Opposite Saturn was an Unhewn Stone. The symbolism is thus explained; the Planets promote the growth of the Seven Metals; the Blazing Star typifies Nature; the Two Circles the agens and patiens or male and female principles. The Unhewn Stone represents the *Materia Prima Philosophorum*; the Cubical Stone the *Patiens Philosophorum*. The Globe represents the Universality of the Lodge. The Brothers wore an apron of white, lined with black and embroidered.

The Jewel was of gilt brass and consisted of two triangles with rays, and the Hebrew Name of Jehovah. On the reverse were the signs of Venus and Mercury. It was attached to a black ribbon. The Sign was made by raising the right hand with the thumb and two forefingers extended and answered by placing the thumb and two forefingers over the heart. The grip consisted of taking the opposite person with the right hand around the waist. The word was Chaos.

The Third Degree was called Bracheus and the Word was Majim, answered by Brocha. The Fourth Degree was Philosophus; the Word Ruachhiber, and the Ninth Degree was Magus.

**Rosicrucians in Mauritius.**—In 1794 a College of Rosicrucians was known to have been flourishing in the Island of Mauritius, but of its subsequent history practically nothing is known, and while the Society forbade at that time the admission of women, it is known that the Abbess of Clermont, Leona Constantia, was actually received as a practicing member and master in 1736.

**Object of Alchemy.**—As the student has already noted, the object of Alchemy was threefold; the search of the Alkahest or Universal Solvent; the Lapis or stone or powder of transmutation, and the Elixir or Universal Medicine. The secret Mystery of Alchemy undoubtedly originated amongst a people given to metallurgy. This is the physical side of the Art. Alchemy is also psychological in its interpretation, and as such is related to Gnosticism. It is moral in its relation to humanity. It aimed in this sense at converting the lead of the body and the silver of the soul into the gold of the spirit, and it is this meaning that Aristotle employs when he says that all men have the Stone within them and that its conversion is the labor of wise men. The Mystic Marriage of the Sun and Moon, in its spiritual and operative sense, is the Union of Soul and Spirit to form the Gnostic Crestos (or Chrestos-Christ).

**What the Hermetic System Unites.**—“The Hermetic system united all nature, inasmuch as ‘that which is above is the same as that which is below.’ When it descends to the mineral kingdom, and the vegetable, it finds in these the same three principles as in Man, namely, a visible body, a virtue or soul, and a spark of the spirit, termed salt, sulphur and mercury, a divine triad; whilst the four lower principles are earth, air, fire and water, but which in another phase represent the physical, psychic, mental and spiritual planes of existence; which are, again, fixed, volatile and unstable. In operations, Alchemy held that ‘all things proceed from the

WILL of One,' and so all were again resolvable to first principles, and that metals might be separated, refined and reunited. They claimed that Moses was an Adept because he possessed the difficult process of reducing the golden calf to powder."<sup>6</sup>

**This Philosophy included in Modern Rosicrucianism.**—Rosicrucian students will observe that all this philosophy is incorporate in the teachings of advanced Rosicrucianism today, and so far as we have any record, always has been. We find evidences of it in the Rosicrucian MS. at Cologne, under the nom-de-plume of Omnis Moriar, recording a Rosicrucian Society in that city in 1115. Also in the Rosary of Arnold de Villanova, circa, 1230. In the Theatrum Chemicum Argentoratum, 1628, in connection with Count von Falkenstein, Prince Bishop of Treves in the 14th century, styled "Most Illustrious and Serene Prince and Father of Philosophers," the same teachings are brought out.

**Rosicrucians in Denmark.**—In 1484 traces of a Rosicrucian Society in Denmark appear under the name "Fraternitatus Rosarii Sleswicii condito, anno 1484." There are also evidences that in the early 17th century the King was at the head of the Order.

**Militia Crucifera Evangelica.**—A Society allied to the Rosicrucians and incorporating much of their philosophy was founded at Lunenberg in 1571, under the name Militia Crucifera Evangelica. The MS. of the Society refers to the Rose and Cross. This organization co-operated with another in Holland, known as the "Friends of the Cross."

**Illuminati.**—The Illuminati, founded May, 1776, by Professor Weishaupt, of Ingoldstadt, has been often confounded with the Rosicrucians, but was a distinct and separate organization.

**Reason of the Resume.**—This brief resume of known Rosicrucian activities and centers dating from even before the year 1300 and continuing almost to 1800 A. D. has been for the purpose of acquainting the student with somewhat of the various works both for and against the Order during a period when its very existence was most stoutly maintained and also most stoutly denied.

**Name of Christian Rosencreutz a focal point.**—All through this period the name of Christian Rosencreutz stands out as the central focal point around which the assumed existence of the Order is built. Many writers on Rosicrucian lore have attempted to identify him with various historical characters—Comte de St. Germain, Francis Bacon, Lord St. Albans, and several others. Some writers have even assumed to give his earlier incarnations,

as Melchizedek, from the obscurity of his origin and commission; the Masonic Hiram A., later becoming the Lazarus of the Gospel Jesus; Giordano Bruno, and still later concepts of him as reincarnate among the "Masters" of the modern theosophical organizations.

**Advice to the credulous.**—It is not our province to comment upon such assumptions, for reasons which the true occult student not blessed with too credulous emotionalism and imagination will divine. First of these reasons is that the ability of various well meaning writers to give authoritative statements regarding personalities in various incarnations is not yet so well attested as to entitle such assertions to merit serious consideration. It may be, and undoubtedly is, possible to read much in Akashic Records concerning cosmological processes, but we are well aware that in each individual homo there is a Holy of Holies, namely, the exact habitat of the Ego, and thus far no human eye has ever seen an EGO. We may clairvoyantly observe and study auras, and read the Memory of Nature, but the Ego is of the Substance of God, the Divine Resident Spark of the Great Central Flame, and—NO MAN HATH SEEN GOD AT ANY TIME.

**Human Lives are Secrets, Past and Present.**—Some things, in the ineffable wisdom of the higher spheres, are reserved from mortal exploitation, and chief among them is the privilege of preserving secret one's past lives. The individual may by development recover his or her own previous incarnations, but unless he or she gives to the clairvoyant examiner PERMISSION or AUTHORITY TO DO SO, no one, however well developed, can enter into the Holy of Holies of individual personal life careers. Otherwise a power would be placed within human possibility that would be inestimable in its danger. Observe, IT CAN BE DONE, BUT ONLY BY PERMISSION.

**Canon of Occult Law.**—Second among the reasons mentioned is that the Canon of Occult Law, up to the present time, is not sufficiently understood by modern psychics to entitle their observations and speculations in the domain of the previous incarnations to serious acceptance, with one single exception—the cases of personages who by their meritorious evolutionary progress have emerged from the privacy of individualism and become historical characters, thus belonging, not to themselves, but to the world and to all time. The life voyages of such personages as the Messiahs of all ages have become so plainly and indelibly written on the Akashic pages, that the developed psychic may read with a

considerable degree of accuracy, and such readings by many psychics will be found to agree in essentials.

**Rosencreutz not an Historical Character.**—But this rule does not apply in the case of Christian Rosencreutz. He may not be considered as an historical character. His existence is a matter of pure mythos to many scholars who have devoted a life-time to the research of Rosicruciana. The Brotherhood itself teaches that the existence, study, work and accomplishment of Christian Rosencreutz IS A FACT, BUT IT MUST ALSO BE STATED THAT THERE IS NO HISTORICAL OR EXTERNAL EVIDENCE TO PROVE IT. Therefore the Brotherhood leaves the matter to the developing ability of the individual student, after giving a definite amount of instruction regarding the matter in the Degrees of the Grades, and realizes that to each student will be given such interior illumination and revelation as his capacity therefor may permit.

**Christian Rosencreutz not the real Name of the person using it.**—We will try to amplify the preceding paragraph. We have stated that the Brotherhood teaches the actual existence of Christian Rosencreutz, but that there is no historical evidence to prove it. We are fully mindful of our Obligations of Secrecy, but we may state that the name "Christian Rosencreutz" was NOT THE REAL NAME OF THE PERSON WHO ASSUMED IT, which perhaps will make the matter clearer to initiate students.

**Where it was derived.**—In the Fama Fraternitatis (1610) the derivation of the Society from an unknown founder is given, and invariably the initials C. RC. Father R. C. and A. C. R. C. are used. No name has ever been given, although his life history is apparently a matter of more or less exact knowledge. Christian Rosencreutz is the name of the hero of the Chymical Marriage and is *supposed* to be identical with the initials given in the Fama. The allegory of Christian Rosencreutz is said by many writers to have been written by Francis Bacon, but of this initiate students must judge for themselves.

**The Three Great Treatises.**—The three great Treatises from which much of the Rosicruciana have sprung are:

1. Fama Fraternitatis of the Meritorious Order of the Rosy Cross. Written 1610, and addressed to the learned in general, and the Governors of Europe. Published at Cassel, 1614.
2. The Confession of the Rosicrucian Fraternity, 1615.

3. The Chymical Marriage of Christian Rosencreutz, anno 1459, circulated in MS. up to 1601. Published in 1616.

C. RC. CHRISTIAN ROSENCREUTZ (ROSYCROSS)



FIG. 97

*"POST CXX ANNOS PATEBO"*

THIS IS AN EXCEEDINGLY RARE PICTURE, THE ONLY PORTRAIT OF C.R.C. EVER SEEN BY THE AUTHOR IN THE COURSE OF MANY YEARS OF ROSICRUCIAN STUDY AND RESEARCH. IT IS TAKEN FROM MR. A. E. WAITE'S SPLENDID WORK "ON *"THE SECRET TRADITION OF FREEMASONRY,"*

**C. RC. begins his Travels.**—According to the Fama, he whom we shall call Christian Rosencreutz was born in 1378. The nar-

rator, one of the Brothers to whom the account of Father R.C. had been handed down and who was supposedly present at the opening of the Symbolic Tomb, continues—"the most godly and highly illuminated Father, our Brother C. RC." . . . "while yet in his growing years journeyed to the East, and there visited the Wise Men of Arabia." By them he was received, called by name and treated as one long expected.

**Damascus, Egypt and Fez.**—Prior to the beginning of his journey he had been educated in the cloister in 1383 and the journey itself was begun in 1393. This is sometimes spoken of as his journey to Damascus (Damasco). He arrived in the latter city in 1394 and was received by the Magi. The narrative continues—"Bro. C. RC. shipped himself over Sinus Arabicus (the Red Sea) into Egypt (1397) and later came to Fez, whither he had been directed by the Arabians. 1398 was the year of his arrival in Morocco.

**Damcar.**—The visit of Rosencreutz to Arabia and Egypt is spoken of as his visit to Damcar (Damascus and Cairo, the House of Wisdom being in the last named city) and it was during his Arabian studies that he translated the Book M. (Marginal, Liber Mundi) from Arabic into "good Latin."

**Visits Spain.**—After completing his studies in Fez, Rosencreutz "sailed with many costly things into Spain, hoping well, as he himself had so well and profitably spent his time in his travel, that the learned in Europe would highly rejoice with him . . . but it was to them a laughing matter." Spain was at that time a center of learning. His arrival in that country is known to have been in 1400.

**Returns to Germany.**—Disappointed in his efforts to enlist Spanish learning, he returned to Germany in 1402 and in 1407 associated with himself three Brothers, monks from the same cloister in which he had his early training; Brothers G. V., I. A. and I. O. With them he built the House of the Holy Spirit (Spiritus Sancti) in 1409, and also wrote the Book "M."

**Four becomes Eight.**—When the building of the House of the S. S. was completed, the original four Brethren concluded to augment their number to eight. Accordingly, Bros. R. C. (a cousin of C. RC.), G. G., F. B. and P. D. were accepted in 1410.

**The Eight Disperse.**—In 1412 the eight dispersed according to agreement into different countries, Bros. F. B. and P. D. remaining

with C. RC., while the other five departed on travels of benevolence and instruction.

**First Death.**—In 1413 we find C. RC. alone once more with R. C., his cousin, and I. O. This year witnessed the first loss by transition of a member of the original group. Frater I. O. passed to the Higher Life, and his passing is recorded in these words: “The first of this Fraternity which dyed, and that in England, was I. O., as Bro. C. long before had foretold him.” His transition was followed by that of Bro. P. D.

**Construction of the Vault.**—In 1415 the construction of the Tomb of the Master was begun, as stated in the F. F.—“After the death of I. O. Bro. R. C. rested not, but as soon as he could, called the rest together, and then, as we suppose, his grave was made.”

**Hermetic Romance; Passing of Christian Rosencreutz.**—In 1459 the “Hermetic Romance, or the Chymical Marriage of Christian Rosencreutz,” was written in High Dutch by Rosencreutz, himself, and in 1484 C. RC. himself passed to the Higher Life. The Corpus was buried and the Vault was Closed and Sealed. Yet in the F. F. we find these quaint words: “We did not know *when* our loving Father R. C. died.”

**Second Circle formed.**—After the construction of the Vault, begun in 1415, the Second Circle was formed. In 1600 Frater I. A. passed to the Higher Life and Frater K. N. became Magus.

**The Secret comes to the Third Row.**—1604 was a notable year for the Order. The writer of the F. F. says: “We (the Fraternity) . . . had no more but the bare names of the beginners (first Circle?), and all their successors to us. Yet there came into our memory a secret, which, through dark and hidden words and speeches of the Hundred Years, Bro. A., the successor of Bro. D., (who was of the last and second row of succession, and had lived amongst many of us), did impart unto us of the Third Row (Circle?) and succession.” “After that A. was deceased there succeeded to his place our loving Brother N. N.”

**Opening of the Vault.**—Christian Rosencreutz was born in 1378 and lived to be one hundred and six years old. One hundred and twenty years from this time brings us to the present year, 1604. In this year, the secret of the Tomb having been lost, Frater N. N. (K. N.?) “was minded to travel (or build, the terms being used alternately) and in the course of the alterations to his ‘building’ the Door of the Tomb of Rosencreutz was revealed, bear-

ing the following line: "POST CXX ANNOS PATEBO." (After One Hundred and Twenty Years I Shall Rise Again.)

The F. F. continues: "In the morning we opened the door and there appeared to our sight a vault of seven sides. . . . Although the sun never shined in the vault, nevertheless it was enlightened with another sun, which hath learned this from the sun, and was situated in the upper part of the center of the sieling. In the midst, instead of a tombstone, was a round altar, covered with a plate of brass, and thereon this engraven—"A. C. R. C. Hoc universi compendium unius mihi sepulchrum feci." (I have made this tomb a compendium of the universe.) Round the brim were the words "Jesus mihi omnia." (Jesus is all things to me.) In the middle were four figures, inclosed in circles, whose circumscription was:

#### The Legends.....

1. Nequaquam vacuum. (There is never a vacuum.)
2. Legis Jugum. (The Yoke of the Law.)
3. Libertas Evangelii. (The Liberty of the Gospel.)
4. Dei Gloria Intacta. (The untouched or unspoiled glory of God.)

**Discovery of the Corpus.**—Now, as we had not yet seen the dead body of our careful and wise Father, we therefore removed the altar aside; then we lifted up a strong plate of brass, and found a fair and worthy body, whole, and unconsumed. . . . In his hand he held a parchment called T., the which, next unto our Bible is our greatest treasure."

**Complete exegesis cannot be given.**—The complete exegesis of the Tomb of the Master cannot be given in print, as it is definitely formulated in the Instruction of the Degrees of the Grades as practiced in the Fraternity today. We give, however, for the information of the reader the following suggestion offered in an excellent little treatise. Construct a figure showing a circle surrounded by a seven sided one or heptagon, in turn surrounded by a dodecagon or twelve sided figure. The altar in itself will represent unity. Its four points will represent N. E. S. W. The heptagon will represent the seven sided tomb and the dodecagon the digits on the number written outside the Door of the Tomb.<sup>7</sup>

**The Figures.**—The figures are thus explained: "The Elements are ONE, the altar; FOUR, the quarters; SEVEN, the Vault, and TWELVE, the number outside the doorway.

“If the seven sided vault were represented by seven concentric circles, the diagram would serve for that of the Solar System, and A (the altar) would be the Sun, N. E. S. W. the quarters, B (the heptagon) the seven planets and C (the dodecagon) the Zodiac.” The tomb *would* in this case be a veritable compendium of the Universe.

**An alternate explanation.**—The same authors also liken the figure to the Vision of St. John. The altar becomes the Throne; N. E. S. W. become the Four Living Creatures; the heptagon represents the Seven Spirits that are before the Throne and the dodecagon the Twenty-four Elders (twice twelve).

**Jennings’ presentiment.**—Hargrave Jennings gives a diagrammatic figure which is not without interest in this connection. The small circle represents the ceiling of the Tomb and the large circle represents the floor of the Tomb. The Seven Sides of the Tomb represent the Seven Planets. The twelve outside the door are shown by the twelve Signs of the Zodiac and the Hierarchies. The connection between the terrestrial and the celestial suns is shown by the lines from the ceiling to the central circle on the floor of the Tomb.<sup>8</sup>

The F. F. closes with the words: “Sub umbra alarum tuarum, Jehova.” (Under the shadow of thy wings, Jehovah.)

**Identity of the Author of the Fama.**—That Francis Bacon, Lord Verulam, was the real author of the Fama is believed by some critics to be proven by a comparison with his work the “New Atlantis,” written just prior to his death in 1626. In this treatise is an account of a wondrous isle in the southern seas, the Island of Bensalem, ruled over by King Solamona (Solomon, Sol-Om-On). Of the inhabitants of the island it was said, they knew well most habitable parts of the world, but were themselves unknown. Of the Brethren of the Rosy Cross it was also said that although in the world, the world knew them not. (See note.)

**Parallels in the New Atlantis.**—The New Atlantis certainly identifies the inhabitants of the mystic isle with the Brothers of the Rosy Cross; it takes up two important features of the Fama, namely, the Society that was in the world yet unknown to the world except by suspicion, and the nature and general characteristics of the Rosy Cross Fraternity. The signature of the F. F. appears three times in the New Atlantis, and the Cavern or Vault, the Tomb of the Master, is likewise a central feature in the book.

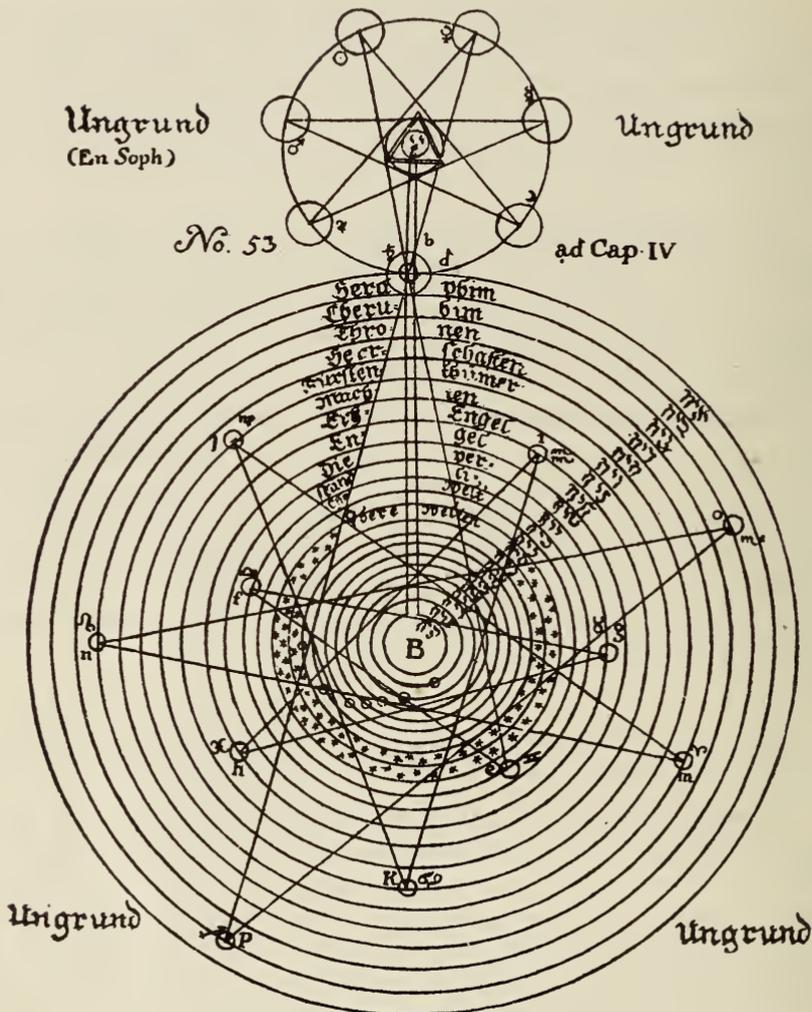


FIG. 98  
 A DIAGRAMMATIC PRESENTMENT OF THE TOMB  
 SYMBOLISM.  
 (From "The Rosicrucians," by Hargrave Jennings.)

**Elogium (Eulogium).**—The Parchment called "T" closes with the following Elogium:

Granum pectori Jesu insitum.

C. RC. ex nobili atque splendida Germaniae R. C. familia oriundus, vir sui seculi divinis revelationibus, subtilissimis imaginationibus, indefessis laboribus ad coelestia atque humana mysteria; arcanave admissus postquam suam (quam Arabico at Africano itineribus collejerat) plus quam regiam atque imperatoriam

Gazam suo seculo nondum convenientem, posteritati eruendam custodivisset et jam suarum Artium, ut et nominis, fides ac conjunctissimos heredes instituisset, mundum minutum omnibus motibus magno illi respondentem fabricasset hocque tandem preteritarum, praesentium, et futurarum, rerum compendio extracto, centenario major, non morbo (quem ipse nunquam corpore expertus erat, nunquam alios infestare sinebat) ullo pellente sed Spiritis Dei evocante, illuminatam animam (inter Fratrum amplexus et ultima oscula) fidelissimo Creatori Deo reddidisset, Pater delictissimus, Frater suavissimus, praeceptor fidelissimus, amicus integerimus, a suis ad 120 annos hic absconditus est.

**Signatures to the Fama.**—Beneath this Elogium the Brethren subscribed their names:

1. Fra. I. A. Fra. C. H. electione Fraternitatis caput.
2. Fra. G. V. M. P. C.
3. Fra. F. R. C. Junior hoeres S. Spiritus.
4. Fra. F. B. M. P. A. Pictor et Architectus.
5. Fra G. G. M. P. I. Cabalista.

Secundi Circuli

1. Fra. P. A. Successor, Fra. I. O. Mathematicus.
2. Fra. A. Successor, Fra. P. D.
3. Fra. R. Successor, Patris C. RC., cum Christo triumphantis.

At the end was written:

Ex Deo nascimur, in Jesu morimur, per Spiritum Sanctum reviviscimus.

**Closing Words of the Fama.**—We may appropriately close this account and digest, with the following lines from the Fama itself addressed to the learned of Europe, and as appropriately addressed to thinkers of today:

“So, according to the wil and meaning of Fra. C. RC., we his brethren request again all the learned in Europe who shal read (sent forth in five languages) this our Fama and Confessio, that it would please them with good deliberation to ponder this our offer, and to examine most nearly and sharply their arts, and behold the present time with all diligence, and to declare their minde, either communicato consilio or singulatim by print. And although at this time we make no mention either of our name or meetings, yet nevertheless every one’s opinion shal assuredly come to our hands, in what language soever it be, nor any body shal fail, whoso gives but his name, to speak with some of us, either by

word of mouth, or else, if there be some lett, in writing. And this we say for a truth, that whosoever shall earnestly, and from his heart, bear affection unto us, it shall be beneficial to him in goods, body and soul; but he that is false-hearted, or onely greedy of riches, the same first of all shal not be able in any manner of wise to hurt us, but bring himself to utter ruine and destruction. Also our building, although one hundred thousand people had very near seen and beheld the same, shal forever remain untouched, undestroyed, and hidden to the wicked world.

Sub umbra alarum tuarum, Jehova.

**Anagrams.**—The student who is expert in the solution or construction of anagrams will find a mine of research in the Latin texts written in the Tomb which if properly divined will reveal a wealth of information concerning the actual intent of the Rosicrucians at the time the legenda of the Tomb were given out.

**Dante, a Rosicrucian.**—The works of Dante are replete with Rosicrucian analogies and symbols. Reghellini of Scio treats of Dante as both Cabalist and Rosicrucian. The 18th Canto of the Purgatory contains the profoundest symbolism, the eagle, mystic ladder, Rose and Cross, pelican, Supper of the Lamb, Pillars of Faith, Hope and Charity, symbolic colors, geometrical figures, etc.<sup>9</sup>

**Greatest Treasure of the Rosicrucians.**—The greatest treasure of the Rosicrucians is, as it always has been, the Holy Bible. A work entitled "The Echo of the Divinely Illuminated Fraternity of the R. C.," 1615, asks the question whether the Gospel terminated the Secret Tradition of antiquity. It then proceeds to answer the question as follows: "By no means; CHRIST ESTABLISHED A NEW COLLEGE OF MAGIC AMONGST HIS DISCIPLES, AND THE GREATER MYSTERIES WERE REVEALED TO ST. JOHN AND ST. PAUL."

**Result of failure to understand the Holy Bible.**—It is the inability to appreciate, much less to understand, that the Holy Bible is itself a text book of the Lesser and Greater Mysteries that has caused so much dissention and denominationalism in the Christian Church of the New Dispensation. Rightly understood, it proves that Christ came not to change the Law but to fulfil it, and shows the continuity of organic religious revelation from the earliest times of the Hebraic dispensation up to the Apocalypse.

**Oath of the Alchemists.**—This faithful adherence to the teachings of the Bible and Gospel Sacraments is shown by the following, from the "Theatrum Chemicum Britannicum," by Elias

Ashmole, in the Breviary of Philosophy. It is the Oath of the Alchemists, whom he divided into Sons and Fathers.

“Will you with me tomorrow be content,  
*Faithfully to receive the Blessed Sacrament,*  
 Upon the Oath that I shall heere you give,  
 For ne gold, ne silver, so long as you live;  
 Neither for love you beare towards your kinne,  
 Nor yet to no great man, preferment to wynne,  
 That you disclose the seacret I shall you teach,  
 Neither by writing, nor by swift speech,  
 But only to him, which you be sure,  
 Hath ever searched after the seacrets of Nature,  
 To him you may reveal the seacrets of this Art,  
 Under the cover of Philosophie, before the world you depart.”

**What our Father Rosencreutz really was.**—Our Father Rosy Cross was to the Order what the Messiahs have been to Humanity in all ages, the reviver of the ancient teachings and practices, a living illustration of the potency of the underlying principles of the philosophy; and the parallels between him and the Master Jesus are numerous and interesting. Religion existed among men ages before Jesus came with his last and greatest revelation. In early boyhood we find him among the Wise Men of the Temple. So, too, with Christian Rosencreutz, the Order had its foundation and inception ages before his time, but he ushered in its renaissance at a time when further revealments were necessary, and to furnish the stimulus to the wave of philosophic, occult and scientific inquiry that is now manifesting in all its fullness of fruition. Somewhat like Jesus, we find him at the age of five entering the cloister, and at fifteen starting on his journey to the Wise Men of Arabia.

**Rosencreutz an Esoteric Name.**—Rosencreutz was an esoteric name, but the master-mind that it identified was intended to be and is, an example to all who seek the Hidden Mysteries and who have the perseverance to go forward with good intent to learn the wonders of God in the Natural World.

#### **Rosicrucianism not a matter of gloom.**—

NOTE—That Rosicrucianism is far from being a philosophy of asceticism, morbidity or gloom, is shown by the statement given by Bulwer Lytton, a Rosicrucian, in his “Zanoni”—The Rosicrucians lived among men, yet were apart from them. They could not be found because they had no *visible* organization or society. They are humble and quiet in exterior and yet judge the world somewhat beneath them in exterior show. They are quite indifferent as to putting their knowledge to commercial use. They do not seek

fame, and care not for distinction or honors. THEY ARE GENERALLY QUITE SOCIABLE." Initiates will understand what is meant by the term "Visible."

**Secrecy of the Rosicrucians.**—Because of the secrecy with which the Rosicrucians have always clothed themselves, doubt as to their existence has always existed. This doubt has usually emanated or originated from amongst those who sought information, not for the unselfish use of enhanced personal powers to be used for the benefit and uplift of humanity and the spread of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity throughout the world, but solely for personal preferment and advancement. SUCH HAVE ALWAYS FAILED TO FIND THE FRATERNITY, and if by chance their initial sincerity of intent did lead them to the doors of the Temple, its weakening or failure of maintenance resulted in their finding themselves lost to it.

**Charlatanism.**—This very secrecy has had an unfortunate result, namely, the creation of opportunity for imposture and charlatanism, which has been practised in every guise, under the name of Roscrucianism. But modern intelligence is showing thoughtful people the true way, and earnest seekers are finding that it is possible to discover the true Society, now, as always for centuries, not only existent but very much alive and at work. To him who is ready, a Teacher will be given, and to him who knocks at the Door of the Temple, entrance will be given.

**To Those Who Seek.**—Readers who are interested in the Rosicrucian Philosophy and Tradition, who seek entrance to the GRADES OF THE PATH and are willing to Obligate themselves to the serious study and work of the Society may find the Way thereto by addressing

THE SECRETARY GENERAL, S. . R. . I. . A. .

1429 Masonic Hall,

46 West 24th Street,

New York City.

#### QUESTIONS ON INSTRUCTION No. 14

1. What personage has been mostly written about in connection with Rosicrucianism?
2. Who have been the most prolific writers?
3. What does one encyclopaedist say?
4. What did Johann Valentin Andrea do?
5. What was the date of the first MS.

6. What was overlooked in connection with this?
7. What is the particular point of emphasis?
8. On what do Rosicrucians and Jacob Boehme agree?
9. What original works are recommended to students?
10. What attitude did Andrea later take toward the Order?
11. Who was the "Great English Rosicrucian"?
12. Who followed Fludd?
13. What did Elias Ashmole and others do?
14. How was the work of the Society to remain?
15. What is given as the exoteric meaning of the name "Rosicrucian"?
16. What is the antiquity of the Rose and Cross?
17. From what are the best poetic fictions of the Rosicrucians known?
18. How does the above picture the Elementals?
19. In what way is Man held to be superior?
20. What further agreement have the Rosicrucians with the Signatura Rerum?
21. What is known of the Rosicrucians at the Hague?
22. What is said of them in Germany?
23. When did the new Constitution appear?
24. Instance a notable German foundation.
25. Who were the Asiatic Brethren?
26. What were their degrees called?
27. Give an idea of the ritual of the "Theoretical Brethren."
28. Are Rosicrucians known to have existed in Mauritius?
29. What is the object of Alchemy stated to be in this Instruction?
30. What does the Hermetic System unite?
31. Is this philosophy included in Modern Rosicrucianism?
32. Are there any traces of Rosicrucianism in Denmark?
33. What was the Militia Crucifera Evangelica?
34. Were the Illuminati connected with the Rosicrucians?
35. What is the reason for the resume given in this Instruction?
36. What does the name of Christian Rosencreutz constitute?
37. What advice is given to the credulous?
38. Are Human Lives secret or exposed to any psychic?
39. Is the Canon of Occult Law perfectly understood at the present time?
40. Was Rosencreutz an historical character?
41. Was Rosencreutz the real name of the person who bore it?
42. Where was it derived?

43. What were the Three Great Treatises?
44. When did C. RC. begin his travels?
45. When did he go to Egypt and Morocco?
46. When did he go to Spain?
47. When did he return to Germany, and what did he do there?
48. What is the meaning of Damcar?
49. Did the original four ever increase their number?
50. Did the Eight remain together?
51. When was the first death in the original group? Who died?
52. When was the construction of the Vault begun?
53. When was the Hermetic Romance written, and by whom?
54. When did C. RC. die?
55. When was the Second Circle formed?
56. Who inherited the Secret of the Tomb?
57. When was the Vault opened, and how was it found to be?
58. What were the inscriptions?
59. How was the body of C. RC. found to be?
60. Give an idea of the symbolism of the Tomb.
61. What was Hargrave Jennings' presentiment?
62. Who is claimed as the real C. RC.?
63. What signatures are contained in the Fama?
64. Give a brief resume of the closing words of the Fama.
65. What is said of anagrams?
66. What was Dante said to be?
67. What is the Greatest Treasure of the Rosicrucians?
68. What has resulted from failure to understand the Bible?
69. What was the Oath of the Alchemists?
70. What does it show us?
71. Why so much secrecy in connection with Rosicrucianism?
72. How did charlatanism get the use of the name "Rosicrucianism"?
73. What was our Father Rosy Cross in reality?
74. What was the person who bore it intended to be to us?
75. Is Rosicrucianism a philosophy of asceticism, morbidity or gloom?

ADDENDA

## THE ROSIKRUCIAN TREE OF LIFE.

Arranged and drawn by Rt. Wor. Fr. Firmus IX° (Metropolitan).

EDITORIAL NOTE: The following chart of the Races was not drawn to accompany the text of this book, but was prepared as a special feature for "MERCURY," the official organ of the Societas Rosicruciana In America. The Races named thereon are those known and recognized by modern ethnological science. The Semites and Mongolians and a few others listed on this chart must be understood as belonging to the Post Atlantean times or the Aryan Epoch, and not the original Atlanteans themselves. The principal value of this chart lies in its excellent illustration of the progress of the Life Stream from its Divine Source through the Four Elements, focussing the Idea in the Divine Mind in the World's Humanity as we know it today. The title "Fifth Race" applies to the Fifth Great Root Race from Divinity and will include the seven general races indicated for the Aryan Epoch. One race will compose the Sixth Great Root Race to follow in the Sixth Epoch. This chart will be found to amplify the text of the book excellently, if the student will keep in mind that the seven races assigned to the Aryan Epoch on page 26 will be found on the chart to be included under the general classification of Homo Caucasicus, which was considered advisable to conform as closely as possible with accepted ethnological teachings.

This chart has been most carefully compiled, corrected and revised, and we believe it will be found one of the most accurate and complete presentations of the races of the world, ever put forth. It is a splendid symbolism of the famous Tree whose roots are in Heaven, and whose branches are on earth. This chart should be preserved by all occult students to whom it may come, for reference when studying the evolution of races, regardless of school, cult, or sect.

In the beginning the appointed God of a new creation took up his work in a space of the firmament which we now visualize and conceive of as the location of the Sun. In the beginning was "the Word," the seven-toned Ray of creation, — sent forth under the WILL of God; focussed through the Mind plane, or WISDOM of God; upon the zodiacal ethers, therein beginning the ACTIVITY of God, or, the Creation. Thus "The Lord made Heaven," (Fire and Air,) "and the Earth," (Water and Earth,) the Four Elements. The Life Ray, focussed through the archetypal patterns, "into the Water, into the Air," — "brought forth" the manifested forms upon the Earth of "every living creature;" — and "the Earth re-constructs the types which she receives," "in a constantly ascending scale of evolution."

In this evolution, four Life waves have surged forth and spent themselves; and the fifth, of our own evolution, having surged almost to its highest force is now manifesting in four lesser waves: — Homos Americanus, Mongolicus, Caucasicus and Ethiopicus. Each of these in turn has sent out numerous lesser vibrations or sub-races; 104 Americanus, 76 Mongolicus, 107 Caucasicus and 40 Ethiopicus. These comprise such races as occult and non-occult anthropology consider sufficiently individual to be accounted a distinct division of the Life-wave.

The Brotherhood teaches that there is already gathering behind one last surviving ripple of this wave, the power of the next great Surge, which will become the sixth in evolution. Some point to Australia, and some to North America as the scene of this resurgence. But it seems that North America will be the theatre of this evolution, since types and ideals evolve faster in those latitudes upon which the Sun works through Aries-Libra, or under the "Royal Arch," symbolizing the Spring, Summer and Harvesting evolution of the great Cosmic seasons.

## THE GREAT "SUN SPOT."

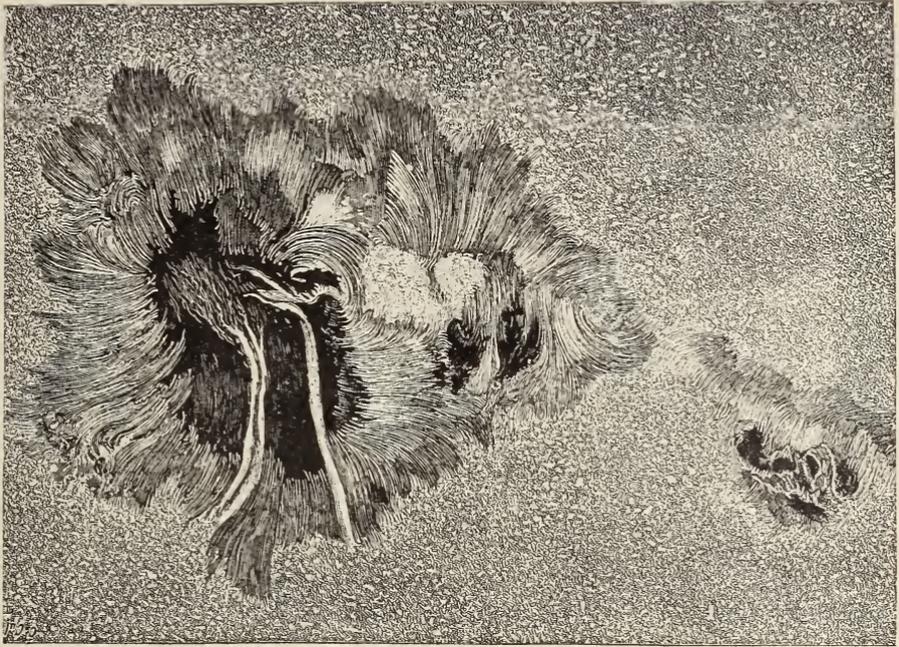


FIG. 100

Instruction VI, Page 136, Supplementary to the data already given regarding the physical features of our sun, we present the accompanying illustration from a drawing by Prof. Langley. This illustration shows the great Sun Spot of September 1870, and the structure of the photosphere. The grains or nodules that appear like snow flakes are from 400 to 600 miles each, across.

In the second instance, that of enabling the deaf to hear via the eyes, the instrument is known as the vocal Phonoscope. It is the invention of Mr. Linder, instructor of deaf mutes in Liepzig. It produces a visualization of sound vibrations by variations in the intensity of a tiny electric light and by rhythmic fluctuations of vibratory waves. *Pop. Sci. Mthly.*, July, 1920.

Music for the deaf is made possible by the instrument known as the Physiophone, said to be the invention of Mr. Gernsback. In this case the rhythm is communicated by electrode contact to the nervous system and music is actually translated directly *into* the individual. *Elec. Exper.*, April, 1920.

Instruction IV, Page 71. In regard to the state of consciousness of the Vegetable Kingdom, the researches of Sir Jagadis Chandra Bose of Calcutta are most illuminating. Sir Jagadis says,—“The activities which underlie life are imperceptible but we have been successful in devising various instruments of extreme sensibility which record the twitching throb of a plant under a shock, the time taken to perceive it, and the rate of impulse at which the message is sent along the conducting path of the plant. Automatic records are made of the living pulsation and the stupor that comes after the action of narcotics; and a definite signal is obtained at the exact moment of plant

death under various poisons." He describes trees as "mimic human beings." Needless to say, his researches open up vast fields for investigation. The effect of alcohol upon plants is the same as upon animals. Carbonic acid affects them as it does human life. Chloroform and ether stupefy and kill plants. The speed of the snail growth is the slowest we can understand. Researches show that plant growth is 6000 times slower. Darwin's researches in what he terms "Plant Minds" are also most interesting.

Instruction VI. Page 131. In reference to elements, it is stated that there are seventy. The Rosicrucian teachings hold to this postulate regardless of the fact that modern science would *appear* to have added many more. But scientists are not all agreed by any means upon the proper classification of these new additions, nor is there as yet a concensus of opinion regarding them. We affirm that when a new and accurate Table of Periodicity is prepared, all the new elements will be found to have their proper places and groupings still within the established seventy.

Instruction VI. Page 133. Value of Radium. At the time of going to press the market quotation for a gram of radium was \$120,000. At this figure, the purchase of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  grams of radium at a cost of \$225,000 is said to be the largest single order in the world. It was made by the State of New York for extensive cancer treatments. To give an idea of what this price means, we may say that gold is worth \$20.57 an ounce at the mint. There are 28.35 grams in an ounce. Therefore radium is worth at present market quotations, \$3,402,000 an ounce.



## DIETETICS

Much stress is laid upon dietetics by various organizations. The Societas Rosicruciana in America has no place in its curriculum for faddism of any kind. With this in mind, we will make clear our position in regard to vegetarianism. With the usual argument that eating flesh foods makes a charnel house of the human stomach and kindred pleasant postulates we have no sympathy. Flesh foods have been the staple of the human race in all ages and we have no latter day revelation to the contrary. They are required for muscle building for those who engage in muscular occupations. It is absurd to state that eating flesh foods reduces the vibrations of the human being to those of the Animal Kingdom. If this were true then the vegetarian argument would stand twice condemned, for confining one's self to a vegetable diet would obviously reduce one's vibrations to those of a vegetable. The truth is that the Animal or Human raises the vibrations of the food it eats, to its own vibratory status. A vegetarian diet IS useful under developmental conditions and for the period of development only, for the following reason. Vegetable products hold in suspension the requisite mineral and chemical constituents required by the human organism in such a state that they are more easily digested and assimilated than in the flesh foods. This means that less energy is required to be expended in the digestive processes.

Therefore, in developmental work, this energy may be conserved, and directed to the specific centers the student is seeking to energize and a vegetarian diet at such times is exceedingly valuable.

It is recorded of the Lord Buddha that on several occasions he defiled himself with pork which was one of the greatest contraventions of custom he could have committed, simply that he might not wound the feelings of some of his humble followers who had prepared a feast for him. It seems to be quite notable however among present day devotees of vegetarianism, that those who practice it expect to be made exceptions of wherever they may be and it is also notable that these devotees do not extend similar consideration to those who may not be followers of the cult. The true Initiate is above faddism and in no case have the Messiahs of Humanity set any such example for us to follow.

For most people a certain amount of flesh food is absolutely necessary. For others, a vegetarian diet is surely as necessary when it is indicated as a dietetic necessity. For still others, even, a more nearly fruit diet is indicated. The rule is, that one should eat what one's system requires as a matter of diagnostic indication, and not as the adherence to a more or less popular fad. The student whose life is quite sedentary will do much better on a purely vegetarian diet, and those engaged almost exclusively in spiritual work will wisely include a greater percentage of pure fruits in their diet. In other words, the individual human system will indicate its requirements according to the nature of the work or development demanded of it.

For those who desire to exercise intelligent selection of food values and constituents, we give herewith tables of the Nutritive Value of Food, prepared by W. O. Atwater, Ph. D., in the booklet known as Farmer's Bulletin No. 142, issued by the United States Department of Agriculture.

TABLES OF AVERAGE COMPOSITION  
OF COMMON AMERICAN FOOD PRODUCTS.

TABLE 1.

Food materials (as purchased).	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohy- drates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound.
ANIMAL FOOD.							
Beef, fresh:	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Calo- ries.</i>				
Chuck ribs.....	16.3	52.6	15.5	15.0	.....	0.8	910
Flank.....	10.2	54.0	17.0	19.0	.....	.7	1,105
Loin.....	13.3	52.5	16.1	17.5	.....	.9	1,025
Porterhouse steak.....	12.7	52.4	19.1	17.9	.....	.8	1,100
Sirloin steak.....	12.8	54.0	16.5	16.1	.....	.9	975
Neck.....	27.6	45.9	14.5	11.9	.....	.7	1,165
Ribs.....	20.8	43.8	13.9	21.2	.....	.7	1,135
Rib rolls.....	.....	63.9	19.3	16.7	.....	.9	1,055
Round.....	7.2	60.7	19.0	12.8	.....	1.0	890
Rump.....	20.7	45.0	13.8	20.2	.....	.7	1,090
Shank, fore.....	36.9	42.9	12.8	7.3	.....	.6	545
Shoulder and clod.....	16.4	56.8	16.4	9.8	.....	.9	715
Fore quarter.....	18.7	49.1	14.5	17.5	.....	.7	895
Hind quarter.....	15.7	50.4	15.4	18.3	.....	.7	1,045
Beef, corned, canned, pickled, and dried:							
Corned beef.....	8.4	49.2	14.3	23.8	.....	4.6	1,245
Tongue, pickled.....	6.0	58.9	11.9	19.2	.....	4.3	1,010
Dried, salted, and smoked.....	4.7	53.7	26.4	6.9	.....	8.9	790
Canned boiled beef.....	.....	51.8	25.5	22.5	.....	1.3	1,410
Canned corned beef.....	.....	51.8	26.3	18.7	.....	4.0	1,270
Mutton:							
Flank.....	9.9	39.0	13.8	36.9	.....	.6	1,770
Leg, hind.....	18.4	51.2	15.1	14.7	.....	.8	890
Loin chops.....	16.0	42.0	13.5	28.3	.....	.7	1,415
Fore quarter.....	21.2	41.6	12.3	24.5	.....	.7	1,235
Hind quarter, without tallow.....	17.2	45.4	13.8	23.2	.....	.7	1,210
Lamb:							
Breast.....	19.1	45.5	15.4	19.1	.....	.8	1,075
Leg, hind.....	17.4	52.9	15.9	13.6	.....	.9	860
Soups:							
Celery, cream of.....	.....	88.6	2.1	2.8	5.0	1.5	235
Beef.....	.....	92.9	4.4	.4	1.1	1.2	120
Meat stew.....	.....	84.5	4.6	4.3	5.5	1.1	305
Tomato.....	.....	90.0	1.8	1.1	5.6	1.5	185
Poultry:							
Chicken, broilers.....	41.6	43.7	12.8	1.4	.....	.7	305
Fowls.....	25.9	47.1	13.7	12.3	.....	.7	765
Goose.....	17.6	38.5	13.4	29.8	.....	.7	1,475
Turkey.....	22.7	42.4	16.1	18.4	.....	.8	1,060
Fish:							
Cod, dressed.....	29.9	58.5	11.1	.2	.....	.8	220
Halibut, steaks or sections.....	17.7	61.9	15.3	4.4	.....	.9	475
Mackerel, whole.....	44.7	40.4	10.2	4.2	.....	.7	370
Perch, yellow, dressed.....	35.1	50.7	12.8	.7	.....	.9	275
Shad, whole.....	50.1	35.2	9.4	4.8	.....	.7	380
Shad, roe.....	.....	71.2	20.9	3.8	2.6	1.5	600
Fish, preserved:							
Cod, salt.....	24.9	40.2	16.0	.4	.....	18.5	325
Herring, smoked.....	44.4	19.2	20.5	8.8	.....	7.4	755
Fish, canned:							
Salmon.....	.....	63.5	21.8	12.1	.....	2.6	915
Sardines.....	5.0	53.6	23.7	12.1	.....	5.3	950
Shellfish:							
Oysters, "solids".....	.....	88.3	6.0	1.3	3.3	1.1	225
Clams.....	.....	80.8	10.6	1.1	5.2	2.3	340
Crabs.....	52.4	36.7	7.9	.9	.6	1.5	200
Lobsters.....	61.7	30.7	5.9	.7	.2	.8	145

\* Refuse, oil.

TABLE 2.

Food materials (as purchased)	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat.	Carbohydrates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound.
ANIMAL FOOD—continued.							
Eggs: Hens' eggs.....	Per ct. 11.2	Per ct. 65.5	Per ct. 13.1	Per ct. 9.3	Per ct. ....	Per ct. 0.9	Calories. 635
Dairy products, etc.:							
Butter.....		11.0	1.0	85.0	.....	3.0	3,410
Whole milk.....		87.0	3.3	4.0	5.0	.7	310
Skim milk.....		90.5	3.4	.3	5.1	.7	165
Buttermilk.....		91.0	3.0	.5	4.8	.7	160
Condensed milk.....		26.9	8.8	8.3	54.1	1.9	1,430
Cream.....		74.0	2.5	18.5	4.5	.5	865
Cheese, Cheddar.....		27.4	27.7	36.8	4.1	4.0	2,075
Cheese, full cream.....		34.2	25.9	33.7	2.4	3.8	1,885
VEGETABLE FOOD.							
Flour, meal, etc.:							
Entire-wheat flour.....		11.4	13.8	1.9	71.9	1.0	1,650
Graham flour.....		11.3	13.3	2.2	71.4	1.8	1,645
Wheat flour, patent roller process—							
High-grade and medium.....		12.0	11.4	1.0	75.1	.5	1,635
Low grade.....		12.0	14.0	1.9	71.2	.9	1,640
Macaroni, vermicelli, etc.....		10.3	13.4	.9	74.1	1.3	1,645
Wheat breakfast food.....		9.6	12.1	1.8	75.2	1.3	1,680
Buckwheat flour.....		13.6	6.4	1.2	77.9	.9	1,605
Rye flour.....		12.9	6.8	.9	78.7	.7	1,620
Corn meal.....		12.5	9.2	1.9	75.4	1.0	1,635
Oat breakfast food.....		7.7	16.7	7.3	66.2	2.1	1,800
Rice.....		12.3	8.0	.3	79.0	.4	1,620
Tapioca.....		11.4	.4	.1	88.0	.1	1,650
Starch.....					90.0		1,675
Bread, pastry, etc.:							
White bread.....		35.3	9.2	1.3	53.1	1.1	1,200
Brown bread.....		43.6	5.4	1.8	47.1	2.1	1,040
Graham bread.....		35.7	8.9	1.8	52.1	1.5	1,195
Whole-wheat bread.....		38.4	9.7	.9	49.7	1.3	1,130
Rye bread.....		35.7	9.0	.6	53.2	1.5	1,170
Cake.....		19.9	6.3	9.0	63.3	1.5	1,630
Cream crackers.....		6.8	9.7	12.1	69.7	1.7	1,925
Oyster crackers.....		4.8	11.3	10.5	70.5	2.9	1,910
Soda crackers.....		5.9	9.8	9.1	73.1	2.1	1,875
Sugars, etc.:							
Molasses.....					70.0		1,225
Candy <sup>b</sup> .....					96.0		1,680
Honey.....					81.0		1,420
Sugar, granulated.....					100.0		1,750
Maple sirup.....					71.4		1,250
Vegetables: <sup>c</sup>							
Beans, dried.....		12.6	22.5	1.8	59.6	3.5	1,520
Beans, Lima, shelled.....		68.5	7.1	.7	22.0	1.7	540
Beans, string.....	7.0	83.0	2.1	.3	6.9	.7	170
Beets.....	20.0	70.0	1.3	.1	7.7	.9	160
Cabbage.....	15.0	77.7	1.4	.2	4.8	.9	115
Celery.....	20.0	75.6	.9	.1	2.6	.8	65
Corn, green (sweet), edible portion.....		75.4	3.1	1.1	19.7	.7	440
Cucumbers.....	15.0	81.1	.7	.2	2.6	.4	65
Lettuce.....	15.0	80.5	1.0	.2	2.5	.8	65
Mushrooms.....		88.1	3.5	.4	6.8	1.2	185
Onions.....	10.0	78.9	1.4	.3	8.9	.5	190
Parsnips.....	20.0	66.4	1.3	.4	10.8	1.1	230
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), <sup>e</sup> dried.....		9.5	24.6	1.0	62.0	2.9	1,565
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), <sup>e</sup> shelled.....		74.6	7.0	.5	16.9	1.0	440
Cowpeas, dried.....		13.0	21.4	1.4	60.8	3.4	1,505
Potatoes.....	20.0	62.6	1.8	.1	14.7	.8	295
Rhubarb.....	40.0	56.6	.4	.4	2.2	.4	60
Sweet potatoes.....	20.0	55.2	1.4	.6	21.9	.9	440
Spinach.....		92.3	2.1	.3	3.2	2.1	95
Squash.....	50.0	44.2	.7	.2	4.5	.4	100
Tomatoes.....		94.3	.9	.4	3.9	.5	100
Turnips.....	30.0	62.7	.9	.1	5.7	.6	120
Vegetables, canned:							
Baked beans.....		68.9	6.9	2.5	19.6	2.1	555
Peas ( <i>Pisum sativum</i> ), green.....		85.3	3.6	.2	9.8	1.1	235
Corn, green.....		76.1	2.8	1.2	19.0	.9	430
Succotash.....		75.9	3.6	1.0	18.6	.9	425
Tomatoes.....		94.0	1.2	.2	4.0	.6	95

<sup>a</sup> Refuse, shell.

<sup>b</sup> Plain confectionery not containing nuts, fruit, or chocolate.

<sup>c</sup> Such vegetables as potatoes, squash, beets, etc., have a certain amount of inedible material, skin, seeds, etc. The amount varies with the method of preparing the vegetables, and can not be accurately estimated. The figures given for refuse of vegetables, fruits, etc., are assumed to represent approximately the amount of refuse in these foods as ordinarily prepared.

TABLE 3.

Food materials (as purchased).	Refuse.	Water.	Protein.	Fat. <sup>a</sup>	Carbohy- drates.	Ash.	Fuel value per pound
VEGETABLE FOOD—continued.							
<b>Fruits, berries, etc., fresh: <sup>a</sup></b>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Per ct.</i>	<i>Calo- ries.</i>
Apples.....	25.0	63.3	0.3	0.3	10.8	0.3	190
Bananas.....	35.0	48.9	.8	.4	14.3	.6	260
Grapes.....	25.0	58.0	1.0	1.2	14.4	.4	295
Lemons.....	30.0	62.5	.7	.5	5.9	.4	125
Muskmelons.....	50.0	44.8	.3	.....	4.6	.3	80
Oranges.....	27.0	63.4	.6	.1	8.5	.4	150
Pears.....	10.0	76.0	.5	.4	12.7	.4	230
Persimmons, edible portion.....	.....	66.1	.8	.7	31.5	.9	550
Raspberries.....	.....	85.8	1.0	.....	12.6	.6	220
Strawberries.....	5.0	85.9	.9	.6	7.0	.6	150
Watermelons.....	59.4	37.5	.2	.1	2.7	.1	50
<b>Fruits, dried:</b>							
Apples.....	.....	28.1	1.6	2.2	66.1	2.0	1,185
Apricots.....	.....	29.4	4.7	1.0	62.5	2.4	1,125
Dates.....	10.0	13.8	1.9	2.5	70.6	1.2	1,275
Figs.....	.....	18.8	4.3	.3	74.2	2.4	1,280
Raisins.....	10.0	13.1	2.3	5.0	68.5	3.1	1,265
<b>Nuts:</b>							
Almonds.....	45.0	2.7	11.5	30.2	9.5	1.1	1,515
Brazil nuts.....	49.6	2.6	8.6	33.7	3.5	2.0	1,485
Butternuts.....	86.4	.6	3.8	8.3	.5	.4	385
Chestnuts, fresh.....	16.0	37.8	5.2	4.5	35.4	1.1	915
Chestnuts, dried.....	24.0	4.5	8.1	3.3	56.4	1.7	1,385
Cocanuts.....	<sup>b</sup> 48.8	7.2	2.9	25.9	14.3	.9	1,295
Cocanut, prepared.....	.....	3.5	6.3	57.4	31.5	1.3	2,865
Filberts.....	52.1	1.8	7.5	31.3	6.2	1.1	1,430
Hickory nuts.....	62.2	1.4	5.8	25.5	4.3	.8	1,145
Pecans, polished.....	53.2	1.4	5.2	33.3	6.2	.7	1,465
Peanuts.....	24.5	6.9	19.5	29.1	18.5	1.5	1,775
Piñon ( <i>Pinus edulis</i> ).....	40.6	2.0	8.7	36.8	10.2	1.7	1,730
Walnuts, black.....	74.1	.6	7.2	14.6	3.0	.5	730
Walnuts, English.....	58.1	1.0	6.9	26.6	6.8	.6	1,250
<b>Miscellaneous:</b>							
Chocolate.....	.....	5.9	12.9	48.7	30.3	2.2	2,625
Cocoa, powdered.....	.....	4.6	21.6	28.9	37.7	7.2	2,160
Cereal coffee, infusion (1 part boiled in 20 parts water) <sup>c</sup> .....	.....	98.2	.2	.....	1.4	.2	30

<sup>a</sup> Fruits contain a certain proportion of inedible materials, as skin, seeds, etc., which are properly classed as refuse. In some fruits, as oranges and prunes, the amount rejected in eating is practically the same as refuse. In others, as apples and pears, more or less of the edible material is ordinarily rejected with the skin and seeds and other inedible portions. The edible material which is thus thrown away, and should properly be classed with the waste, is here classed with the refuse. The figures for refuse here given represent, as nearly as can be ascertained, the quantities ordinarily rejected.

<sup>b</sup> Milk and shell.

<sup>c</sup> The average of five analyses of cereal coffee grain is: Water 6.2, protein 13.3, fat 3.4, carbohydrates 72.6, and ash 4.5 per cent. Only a portion of the nutrients, however, enter into the infusion. The average in the table represents the available nutrients in the beverage. Infusions of genuine coffee and of tea like the above contain practically no nutrients.

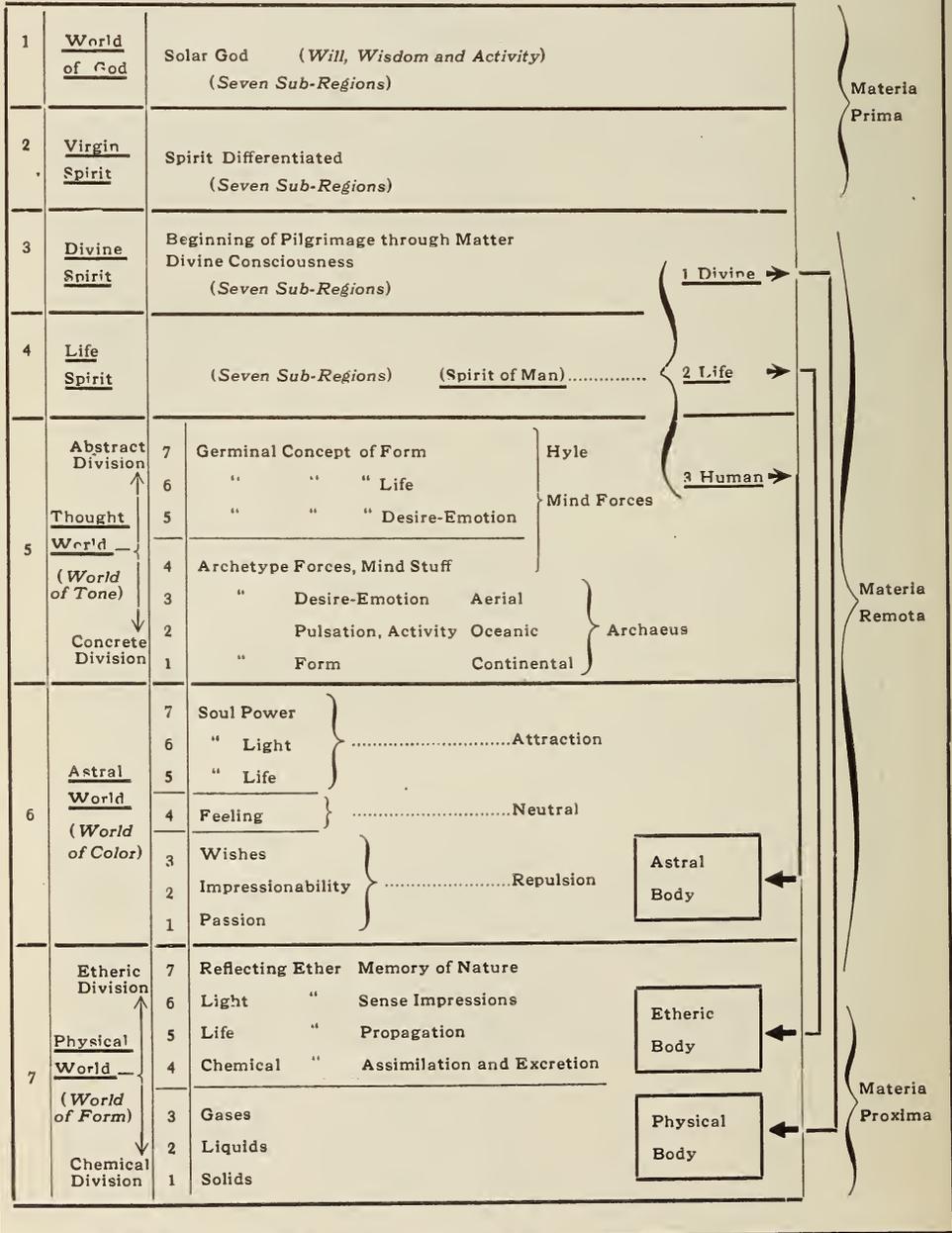
## TABLE

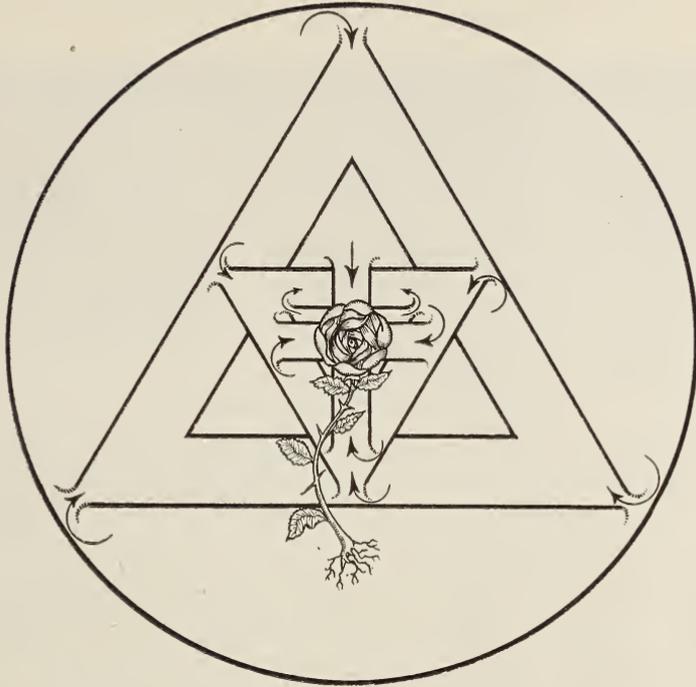
## COMPARATIVE PROGRESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE MICROCOSMIC BRAIN.

How the fetal human brain develops progressively in strict analogy to the evolutionary development of animal correspondences.

GEOLOGICAL		ANIMAL	HUMAN
Time : Age :	Archæan. Eozoic. Azoic.		
1. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Paleozoic. Invertebrate Silurian, Upper and Lower. Cambrian to Lower Heidelberg. Sandstones, Limestones, Shale, Clay, Slate, and Gneiss.	Animal vestiges, All invertebrates, Mollusca, Crustacea, Polypes, Crustaceous Fishes.	Fœtal Human Brain, at one month, resembles that of Invertebrates.
2. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Paleozoic. Fishes—Acrogens. Devonian and Carboni- ferous. Oriskany to Permian. Old Red Sandstones, Slate, Limestones, sec- ond and third Coal Mea- sures, Lower Red Sand- stones, Magnesian Lime- stones.	Animal vestiges. Primitive, but notably True Fishes.	Fœtal Human Brain at two months, resembles the brain of a Fish.
3. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Mesozoic. Reptiles. Jura-Trias (Triassic, and Jura Triassic). Lower to Purbeck. New Red Sandstone, Marlstones.	Animal vestiges. All Reptiles, Lizards, Crocodiles, Frog Species, Turtles, Gigantic Reptiles and Extinct Monsters.	Fœtal Human Brain at three months, resembles a Turtle's.
4. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Mesozoic. Reptiles. Cretaceous. Lower to Saranac. Upper and Lower Chalks, Marl, Oxford and Bath Oolites, Neo- comian.	Animal vestiges. Platipi, Semi-Aquatic and Land Animals, and Birds.	Fœtal Human Brain at four months is like to that of a Bird.
5. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammals. Tertiary. Eocene, Oligocene, Mio- cene. Green River, Igneous, and Nummulitic.	Animal vestiges. Marsupials, Rodents, Ruminati, and Animals that walk on their toes, as distinguished from fins and web feet.	Fœtal Human Brain at five months, resembles that of a Rodent; at six months, a Rumi- nant; at seven months, a Digitigrade.
6. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammals. Tertiary. Pliocene. English Crag, and Sub- Appennine Beds.	Animal vestiges. All the foregoing, with the addition of Four- Handed Animals or Quadrumanas, Monkeys and Anthropoids.	Fœtal Human Brain at eight months' develop- ment, resembles that of a Quadrumana or Monkey.
7. Time : Age : Era : Period : Rocks :	Cenozoic. Mammal. Quaternary or Post- Tertiary. Glacial, Champlain, Recent. Pleistocene, Contemp- orary Deposits, Meteor- ites, Cavernous.	Animal vestiges. Practically all the fore- going with excessive in- crease of class, genus, species, and type, also MAN, the first true two-handed animal or Bimana.	Fœtal Human Brain at nine months' develop- ment has become that of a true Human Being or Bimana.

**Chart of the Seven World Regions in the Seventh Cosmic Region**  
**823, 543 Hierarchies**





A ROSICRUCIAN PRAYER SYMBOL.

By FR. FIRMUS, IX°.

The Christ taught that prayer was very important. He gave instructions how to pray, and gave actual prayers. St. Paul said, "*continue*" in prayer.

Definitions as to what prayer really is or should be, differ. One's conception of prayer is determined by his conception of the Power to whom he prays. Different religions of the world teach prayer in widely different ways:—the Mohammedan to Allah via Mahomet; Protestants to God principally through Jesus Christ; Catholics largely through the Blessed Virgin Mary, Mother of Jesus.

But Rosicrucians have the most sublime conception of prayer that has ever been revealed to worshippers in this world. It is profound in Wisdom, Cosmic in conception and must, other things being equal be the most potent of all forms of prayer.

A brief summary of the following symbol will show what the Rosicrucian concentrates upon in making his invocation.

The Circle is the symbol of the Cosmic ALL—the ABSOLUTE.

The Aspirational Triangle (Apex upward), is the symbol of the SUPREME BEING.

The Operative Triangle (Apex downward), is the symbol of the SOLAR GOD.

The Cross is the symbol of the INDWELLING SPIRIT of our Planet Earth, the CHRISTOS.

The Rose is the symbol of the Virgin Spirit EGO.

The power of the Rosicrucian Prayer is greatly intensified by the concept of unity, which runs in unbroken potency from the EGO *through* and *in* each of these exalted Powers. The symbol illustrates this unity. It shows the Supreme Being as differentiated *not from* but *within* the Absolute.

This is indicated by the influx of the Absolute at the points of the Triangle. It also shows the Solar God as differentiated *within* the Supreme Being (note influx at outer points of the triangle), and influx from the Absolute at inner points of the triangle.

It also shows the Christos differentiated *within* the Solar God, but still the Unity through the Solar influx (Arms of the Cross) and from the Supreme Being and the Absolute (Pillar of the Cross).

And in the center of the Super Trinity, with its roots in the Absolute, its stem in the Supreme Being and the Solar God, and its Flower in the Heart of the Christos, is "the Sacred Symbolic "ROSE."

Through this symbol the Rosicrucian may open veil after veil of the Temple, until his prayer can ascend to the veritable Holy of Holies.

## A SPLENDID GEOLOGIC EXHIBIT IN NEW YORK CITY.

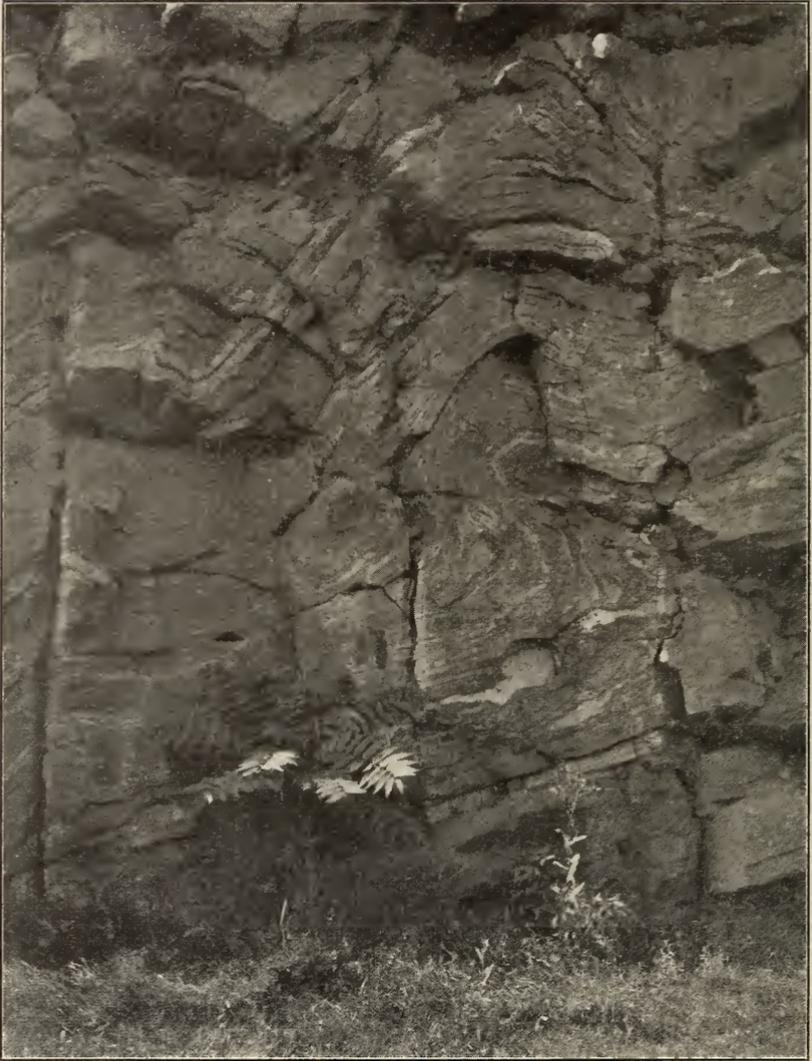


FIG. 101  
AN OVERTURNED FOLD BETWEEN NELSON AND SHAKESPEARE  
AVES., BRONX, NEW YORK CITY.

*(Photo by Khei.)*

One of the many interesting features presented by a study of the geology of New York City and its Metropolitan District. This example is recommended to the consideration of Rosicrucian students, and we would be glad to have opinions as to whether it represents the "competent" or "incompetent" types. Rosicrucianism is not necessarily a study of geology, but it is a study of Nature, for Nature is the Book in which the character of God is written.

## CHANGES IN THE EARTH'S CRUST.



FIG. 102  
 NIAGARA RIVER AND GORGE, SHOWING RIVER MARKS  
 AND PRESENT RAPIDS.

(Photo by G. E. S. Miller.)

This excellent photograph was obtained after our Instructions on the activities of the Earth Regent and the changes in the Earth's Crust had gone to press. The picture illustrates the large way in which the "Nature Forces" work. Originally there was but one fall, located at Queenston fed only by Lake Erie. That was between 35,000 and 50,000 years ago. At that time the Great Lakes as then constituted emptied either through the Mississippi or the Ottawa Valley. A gradual tilting of the earth's crust threw the balance in favor of the St. Lawrence Valley, which gives us the Niagara of history and today. Some geologists believe that a reversal of this tilting is now going on and that at some remote period Lakes Huron, Superior and Michigan will again empty into the Mississippi. The cataract flows over limestone formations older than Alps, Pyrenees or Himalayas. In 1678 there were three falls and the Canadian Cataract was as far down stream as the American. The Canadian Cataract has receded several hundred feet in the past 242 years and goes back at the rate of about five feet per year while the American Cataract is comparatively stationary. The water is said to be 30 feet deep where it goes over the Canadian fall, and over 20,000,000 tons of water pass over the Cataract every hour, 95% over the Canadian and 5% over the American. The Cataract has eaten its way up from Queenston forming the gorge shown in the photograph.



REFERENCES

In order to show the close approximation between the Rosicrucian teachings and those of academic science, religion and philosophy, quotations have been freely made from the following well known authorities, together with references to the works of occult writers of repute.

The numbers in the left hand column correspond to those given in the paragraphs of the text of each Instruction. The numbers in the extreme right hand column indicate the page in the present volume in which the reference number occurs.

INSTRUCTION No. 1.

1 Sandivogius, Adept, 1650.....	1
2 Bible, Genesis i-26, 27.....	2
3 Secret Doctrine, 1-650, 295,—ii-675.....	3
4 Kabbalah Unveiled, Mathers, p. 177, Ch. xxvii.....	4
5 Secret Doctrine, Vol. 1, p. 107.....	4
6 Hartmann, Secret Symbols of the Rosic. Voc. p. 5, "Life.".....	5
7 John iv-24. ....	6
8 Heindel, Cosmo Concep. p. 374. ....	6
9 " " " " p. 374 and Nicene Creed. ....	6
10 " " " " p. 375 " " " " ....	6
11 " " " " p. 375. ....	7
12 Nicene Creed. ....	7
13 Ros. Rit. O-O ....	7
14 Heindel, Cosmo Concep. p. 374, John. i-3. ....	7
15 Hartmann, Sec. Symb. Voc. p. 2 ....	7
16 " " " " p. 4 ....	8
17 " " " " p. 2 ....	13
18 Steiner, Out. Occ. Sci. p. 31 ....	15
19 " " " " p. 44 ....	15
20 " " " " p. 35 ....	15
21 " " " " p. 33 ....	15
22 Rosic. Mass. ....	15

INSTRUCTION No. 2.

1 Men of the Old Stone Age, Henry Fairfield Osborn, p. 18.....	29
2 " " " " " " " " " " p. 13.....	33
3 " " " " " " " " " " p. vii, Preface. ....	34
4 " " " " " " " " " " p. vii, " " ....	35

INSTRUCTION No. 3.

All References Noted in the Text.

INSTRUCTION No. 4.

1 Standard. (Crystalloid) .....	66
2 Standard. (Protoplasm) Botany, p. 1, C. E. Bessey, .....	67
3 " " " " " " " " " " Chemical Physiology, p. 186, .....	67
4 Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 177, .....	67
5 Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 78, .....	68
6 Standard. (Reason) .....	73
7 Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 172, .....	81
8 " " " " " " " " " " p. 33, .....	83

INSTRUCTION No. 5.

1 Rosicrucian Creed. Other references are given in the text. ....	90
2 Steiner, Out. Occ. Sci. p. 88. ....	109

## INSTRUCTION No. 6.

1	Standard.	-----	113
2	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Science," p. 5	-----	113
3	Standard.	-----	115
4	"	-----	115
5	"	-----	115
6	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Science," p. 6	-----	115
7	" " " " " " " " p. 7	-----	115
8	" " " " " " " " p. 7	-----	115
9	" " " " " " " " p. 8	-----	117
10	" " " " " " " " p. 9	-----	117
11	" " " " " " " " p. 10	-----	117
12	" " " " " " " " p. 18	-----	118
13	" " " " " (Prof. Svante Arrhenius) p. —	-----	118
14	" " " " " "Miracles, etc. etc. p. 21	-----	118
15	" " " " " " " " p. 21	-----	118
16	" " " " " " " " p. 23	-----	118
17	" " " " " " " " p. 9	-----	119
18	" " " " " " " " p. 43	-----	121
19	" " " " " " " " p. 51	-----	121
20	Prof. W. W. Campbell, Lick Observatory.	-----	121
21	Henry Smith Williams, in Miracles, etc. etc. p. 51-52	-----	122
22	Young.—General Astronomy p. 401	-----	122
23	" " " " p. 407	-----	123
24	Henry Smith Williams, In "Miracles of Modern Science, p. 58	-----	123
25	" " " " " " " " p. 71	-----	125
26	" " " " " " " " p. 72	-----	125
27	" " " " " " " " p. 84	-----	125
28	" " " " " " " " p. 111	-----	125
29	Standard, (Mass)	-----	126
30	Robert Kennedy Duncan, in "The New Knowledge" p. 11	-----	126
31	" " " " " " " " p. 11	-----	126
32	Standard	-----	126
33	"	-----	126
34	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, F. C. S., in "The New Knowledge" p. 250	-----	127
35	" " " " " " " " p. 250-1	-----	127
36	Sir J. J. Thomson, quoted by Williams in "Miracles" etc p. 135	-----	128
37	" " " " " " " " p. 135	-----	128
38	" Joseph Thomson	-----	128
39	" " " " " " " "	-----	128
40	Prof. Osborne Reynolds, Owens College, Manchester. Explained by Prof. John Mackenzie, of Mineapolis. Quoted by Williams, p. 136	-----	128
41	" " " " " " " " p. 136	-----	128
42	" " " " " " " " p. 137	-----	128
43	" " " " " " " " p. 137	-----	129
44	" " " " " " " " p. 140	-----	129
45	Profs. Stewart and Tait, Quoted by Duncan, p. 242	-----	130
46	Sir J. J. Thomson " " Williams, p. 130	-----	130
47	Henry Smith Williams, in "Miracle of Science" p. 109	-----	130
48	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in "The New Knowledge" p. 1	-----	131
49	" " " " " " " " p. 6	-----	131
50	" " " " " " " " p. 76-7	-----	131
51	" " " " " " " " p. 248	-----	132
52	" " " " " " " " p. 171	-----	132
53	" " " " " " " " p. 82	-----	132
54	" " " " " " " " p. 148	-----	133
55	" " " " " " " " p. 148	-----	133
56	" " " " " " " " p. 95	-----	133
57	" " " " " " " " p. 147	-----	133
58	" " " " " " " " p. 151	-----	134

59	Henry Smith Williams	" Miracles, etc.	p. 123	134
60	"	"	p. 117	134
61	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in	"The New Knowledge,"	p. 179	134
62	"	"	p. 187	134
63	"	"	p. 205	135
64	Prof. Chas. A. Young, Princeton, quoted by	Duncan,	p. 228	135
65	Lord Kelvin	"	p. 228	135
66	Prof. Ernest Rutherford, Manchester University.		p. 231	136
67	Prof Clerk-Maxwell	"	p. 233	136
68	Sir William Ramsey,	"	p. 256	137
69	Robt. Kennedy Duncan, in	"The Knowledge"	p. 257	137
70	H. B. Curtis, Lick Observ. Quo. in	"Miracles of Science.	p. 46	137

## INSTRUCTION, No. 7.

1	Britannica, "Creed," look up individual author.	144
2	"	145
3	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science. p. 292	158
4	"	158
5	"	160
6	Britannica, "Creed," look up individual author.	160

## INSTRUCTION No. 8.

1	Isabel M. Lewis, Naut. Almanac Off. U. S. Naval Obser., Wash., Aug., 1919,	166
2	Key to the Universe, Curtis p. 230.	172
3	Outlines of Occult Science, Steiner, p. 427	173
4	"	173
5	Mackey's Sphinxiad, The Mythological Astronomy of the Ancients Demonstrated. p. 68	178
6	Where did Life Begin? G. Hilton Scribner.	179
7	"	179
8	"	180
9	"	180
10	"	182
11	"	182
12	"	183
13	Prof. Wm. Crookes, Address, Brit. Assn. Sc.	184
14	Where Did Life Begin? Scribner.	187
15	Elec. Experimenter, July, 1920.	189

## INSTRUCTION No. 9.

1	Rev. Text Book of Geology, Dana. p. 7-8. Also quoting Murray.	195
2	Dana, p. 204	195
3	" p. 236	196
4	" p. 204-205	196
5	" p. 206	196
6	Extract from J. H. Jeans, in "Popular Astronomy," June-July, 1919. Vol. xxvii No. 6, Whole No. 266	196
7	Blavatsky. Secret Doctrine, Vol. 1, p. 40	197
8	Dana, p. 125	198
9	" p. 137	198
10	" p. 168	198
11	" p. 170	198
12	Mackey's Sphinxiad. (Cyclops) p. 67	199
13	Dana, p. 171	199
14	" p. 122	200
15	" p. 183	201
16	" p. 204	201
17	" p. 189-190	201
18	" p. 189	201
19	New York Herald, N. Y. World, Journal, May 27th.	202

20	Heindel, Cosmo Conception, p. 510 .....	202
21	Dana, p. 404 .....	204
22	Britannica, Vol. 28, p. 179 .....	206
23	“ “ p. 191 .....	207
24	“ “ p. 191 .....	207
25	“ “ p. 192 .....	207
26	“ “ p. 192 .....	208
27	Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 506 .....	210
28	“ “ “ p. 278 .....	213
29	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 243 .....	213
30	“ “ “ “ p. 243 .....	214
31	Heindel, Cosmo-Conception, p. 289-291 .....	214
32	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 245-246 .....	215
33	“ “ “ “ “ p. 247 .....	215
34	“ “ “ “ “ p. 147 .....	216
35	Steiner, Outlines of Occult Science, p. 158 .....	216
36	“ “ “ “ “ p. 241 .....	216
37	“ “ “ “ “ p. 250 .....	216

## INSTRUCTION No. 10.

1	Dana, Rev. Text Book of Geology, p. 204 .....	222
2	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 204 .....	222
3	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 406-407 .....	225
4	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 410 .....	226
5	Barnum Brown, Nat'l. Geog. Mag. May, 1920. ....	228
6	Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life, p. 231 .....	232
7	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 226 .....	235
8	Webster, .....	235
9	Minchin, E. A., 1916, (Osborn, P. 92). p. 32 .....	237
10	Osborn, (As above). p. 93 .....	237
11	Nageli. (1884). .....	238
12	Osborn. p. 94 .....	238
13	“ p. 94 .....	238
14	“ p. 95 .....	238
15	“ p. 98 .....	239
16	Wilson, E. B. 1906. p. 434 .....	239
17	Osborn, p. 77-78 .....	239
18	“ p. 99 .....	239
19	Wager, Harold, 1915. p. 468 .....	240
20	Pirsson, L. V. and Schuchert, Ch., 1915. p. 164 .....	241
21	Osborn, p. 101 .....	241
22	“ p. 103 .....	241
23	“ p. 245 .....	241
24	“ p. 249-251 .....	243
25	“ p. 255 .....	243
26	“ p. 255 .....	244
27	C. C. Adams, Mercury, Vol. 4, No. 5. ....	248
28	Holy Bible, Galatians vi-7. ....	248
29	Holy Bible, Matthew v-26. ....	249
30	“ “ “ “ “ “ xxv, 23. ....	249

## INSTRUCTION No. 11.

1	Standard. (Monera) .....	257
2	“ (Ameba) .....	257
3	Rosicrucian Symboloy, Khei. ....	258
4	Prof. H. E. Walter, "The Human Skeleton." p. 57-58 .....	258
5	Haeckel, Ernst. Hist. of Creation. Vol. 1, p. 85 .....	261
6	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 12 .....	261
7	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 12 .....	261
8	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 13 .....	262
9	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 14 .....	262
10	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 15 .....	262
11	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 86 .....	262
12	“ “ “ “ “ “ p. 313 .....	262

13	Heindel, Cosmo Conception, p. 228 .....	262
14	C. G. Leland, The Alternate Sex, p. 34 .....	262
15	" " " " " p. 35 .....	263
16	Haeckel, Hist. Crea. Vol. 1. p. 98-99 .....	263
17	" " " " " p. 65 .....	264
18	" " " " " p. 100 .....	264
19	" " " " " p. 202 .....	266
20	Leland, Alternate Sex, p. 35 .....	266
21	Haeckel, Hist. Crea. Vol. 1. p. 281 .....	267
22	" " " " " p. 183 .....	269
23	Leland, Alt. Sex. p. 129 .....	269
24	Dr. W. H. Ballou, N. Y. American, Aug. 17, 1919 .....	270
25	Nat'l Geog. Mag. Dr. Jos. (Wm.) Showalter, Vol. xxxvi, No. 2, p. 177.....	270
26	Nat'l. Geog. Mag. Dr. Jos. (Wm.) Showalter, p. 169 .....	270
27	" " " " " " " p. 167 .....	270
28	World Almanac, 1919 p. 52 .....	270
29	Prof. Herbert Eugene Walter, (Human Skeleton) .....	271
30	" " " " " " " .....	271
31	" " " " " " " .....	272
32	" " " " " " " .....	272
33	Dr. Dudley H. Morris, Dept. Pathology, N. Y. Coll. P. & S. ....	272
34	H. E. Walter, (Genetics) .....	274
35	Dr. Richard S. Lull, Yale. Organic Evolution. ....	275
36	American Museum of Natural History, N. Y. ....	275
37	Prof. Simon Newcomb. ....	275
38	Alfred Binet, The Psychic Life of Organisms p. 28 .....	276
39	" " " " " " " p. 77 .....	277
40	Dr. Daniel Trembly MacDougall, Director, Bot. Dept. Carnegie Institu. Wash. Quoted by John W. Harding. ....	278
41	Standard, .....	278
42	Prof. Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life. p. 32 .....	279
43	" " " " " " " p. 32-36 .....	280
44	" " " " " " " p. 37 .....	281
45	" " " " " " " p. 90 .....	281
46	" " " " " " " p. 104 .....	281
47	Ernst, A. The New Thoma, See note. Osborn, p. 286. ....	281
48	Prof. Osborn, Origin and Evolution of Life. p. 286 .....	282
49	" " " " " " " p. 286 .....	282
50	" " " " " " " p. 286 .....	283
51	Prof. C. Wm. Beebe, The Bird, its Form and Function. Curator of Orni- thology at N. Y. Zoological Park. ....	285
52	Dr. W. H. Ballou, D. Sc. N. Y. American, Sun. 1916. ....	285
53	Dr. W. H. Ballou, A. M., Ph. D., D. S., N. Y. American. ....	286
54	N. Y. Times, Sun. Oct. 21, 1906. ....	286
55	A. J. Atkins, M. D., "The Life Principle." 1905. ....	287

## INSTRUCTION No. 12.

1	Britannica, (Kabalah) Vol. xv. p. 620 .....	296
2	Sacred Writings (Books) Vol. 4, p. 157-158 .....	297
3	Buddhist Catechism, p. 31 .....	300
4	" " " p. 32 .....	301
5	" " " p. 37 .....	301
6	" " " p. 37 .....	301
7	" " " p. 40 .....	302
8	" " " p. 46 .....	302
9	" " " p. 96 .....	303
10	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 105-106.....	308
11	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 106..... (See note of refs. bottom of Note 4) .....	308
12	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 109 .....	308
	(See note of refs. Note 9.) .....	308

13	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 139 .....	308
	(See note 70 refs.)	
14	A Suggestive Inquiry into the Hermetic Mystery, Atwood, p. 533-534.....	309
15	Electrical Experimenter, April, 1919. p. 860 .....	311
16	Secret Doctrine, Vol.1, p. 105 .....	312
17	“ “ “ Ft. Note, p. 105 .....	312
18	Also quoted by Heindel, Cos. Con. 2nd Ed. p. 416 .....	313
19	Max Heindel, Cos. Con. 2nd. Ed. p. 421 .....	313

## INSTRUCTION No. 14.

1	Italics ours .....	352
2	Britannica, Vol. xxiii-p. 737 Art. Rosicrucian. Also see Gardiner's Catalog Raisonne of Works on the Occult Sciences. London, 1903.....	352
3	Heckethorn's "The Secret Societies of all Ages and Countries. Vol. 1, p. 223. ....	353
4	Jacob Bohme and the Alchemists. Dr. von Harliss. Leipzig, 1882, 2nd. ed.	359
5	Heckethorn, Vol. 1, p. 230 .....	360
6	John Yarker,—Arcane Schools, p. 204. ....	362
7	The Rosicrucians. By Bros. H. C. and K. M. B. London. ....	368
8	Hergrave Jennings, The Rosicrucians, Their Rites and Mysteries, Plate 8. ....	369
9	King. Remains of the Gnostics. ....	372